# LandWeb Manual

### **C**ontents

| List of Figures |         |          |           |                          |    |  |
|-----------------|---------|----------|-----------|--------------------------|----|--|
| Li              | st of T | ables    |           |                          | 17 |  |
| οv              | ervie   | w        |           |                          | 23 |  |
|                 | 0.1     | Backg    | round .   |                          | 23 |  |
|                 | 0.2     | The La   | ndWeb Mo  | odel                     | 23 |  |
|                 |         | 0.2.1    | Data pre  | paration                 | 24 |  |
|                 |         |          | 0.2.1.1   | Public data sources      | 25 |  |
|                 |         |          | 0.2.1.2   | Proprietary data sources | 25 |  |
|                 |         | 0.2.2    | Vegetatio | on dynamics              | 25 |  |
|                 |         | 0.2.3    | Wildfire  | dynamics                 | 26 |  |
|                 |         | 0.2.4    | Summar    | y maps and statistics    | 26 |  |
|                 |         | 0.2.5    | LandWeł   | рарр                     | 26 |  |
|                 | 0.3     | Previo   | us Manual | Versions                 | 27 |  |
| 1               | Gett    | ing star | ted       |                          | 29 |  |
|                 | 1.1     | Prerec   | uisites . |                          | 29 |  |
|                 |         | 1.1.1    | Docker    |                          | 29 |  |
|                 |         | 1.1.2    | Bare met  | al installation          | 30 |  |
|                 |         |          | 1.1.2.1   | Development tools        | 30 |  |
|                 |         |          | 1.1.2.2   | Geospatial libraries     | 32 |  |
|                 |         |          | 1.1.2.3   | Version control          | 34 |  |

| 4  |        |          |             |                |          |         |     |       | Co    | ntents |
|----|--------|----------|-------------|----------------|----------|---------|-----|-------|-------|--------|
|    |        |          | 1.1.2.4     | R and Rstudi   | 0        |         |     |       |       | 35     |
|    | 1.2    | Getting  | g the code  |                |          |         |     |       |       | 38     |
|    | 1.3    | Project  | directory   | structure .    |          |         |     |       |       | 38     |
|    | 1.4    | Updati   | ng the cod  | e              |          |         |     |       |       | 39     |
|    |        | 1.4.1    | Using Git   | Kraken         |          |         |     |       |       | 40     |
|    |        | 1.4.2    | Using the   | command lir    | ne       |         |     |       |       | 40     |
|    | 1.5    | Data re  | quiremen    | ts             |          |         |     |       |       | 41     |
|    | 1.6    | Getting  | g help      |                |          |         |     |       |       | 41     |
| 2  | Dun    | ning Lar | dwah        |                |          |         |     |       |       | 43     |
| 4  |        | ·        |             | c ·            |          |         |     |       |       |        |
|    | 2.1    | Model    |             | configuration  |          |         |     |       |       | 43     |
|    |        | 2.1.1    | Select a st | udy area       |          |         |     | <br>• | <br>• | 44     |
|    |        |          | 2.1.1.1     | FMA bounda     | ries .   |         |     | <br>• | <br>• | 44     |
|    |        |          | 2.1.1.2     | Choosing a s   | tudy are | ea      |     |       |       | 46     |
|    |        | 2.1.2    | Select a so | cenario        |          |         |     |       | <br>• | 48     |
|    |        | 2.1.3    | Replication | on             |          |         |     |       | <br>• | 49     |
|    | 2.2    | Runnir   | ig the mod  | el             |          |         |     |       | <br>• | 49     |
|    |        | 2.2.1    | Interactiv  | e R session    |          |         |     |       | <br>• | 49     |
|    |        | 2.2.2    | Comman      | dline interfac | e        |         |     |       |       | 50     |
|    | 2.3    | Post-pi  | cocessing a | nalyses        |          |         |     |       |       | 51     |
|    | 2.4    | Advanc   | ed setup .  |                |          |         |     |       |       | 51     |
|    |        | 2.4.1    | Customiz    | ing model ru   | n config | guratio | n . |       |       | 51     |
|    |        | 2.4.2    | Cache bac   | ckend          |          |         |     |       |       | 51     |
|    |        | 2.4.3    | Speeding    | up disk-base   | d opera  | tions   |     |       |       | 52     |
|    | 2.5    | Additio  | nal Resou   | rces           |          |         |     |       |       | 52     |
| St | udy ar | eas      |             |                |          |         |     |       |       | 53     |

| 5 |
|---|
|   |

| 3  | Land  | dWeb_pi  | reamble Module                           | 55 |
|----|-------|----------|--|----|
|    |       |          | 3.0.0.1 Authors:                         | 55 |
|    | 3.1   | Modul    | le Overview                              | 55 |
|    |       | 3.1.1    | Module summary                           | 55 |
|    | 3.2   | Param    | neters                                   | 55 |
|    | 3.3   | Data d   | lependencies                             | 56 |
|    |       | 3.3.1    | Input data                               | 56 |
|    |       | 3.3.2    | Output data                              | 56 |
|    | 3.4   | Links    | to other modules                         | 56 |
| Ve | getat | ion subi | model                                    | 57 |
|    | 0     |          |  |    |
| 4  | Lan   | dR Biom  | nass_speciesData Module                  | 59 |
|    |       |          | 4.0.0.1 Authors:                         | 59 |
|    | 4.1   | Modul    | le Overview                              | 59 |
|    |       | 4.1.1    | Module summary                           | 59 |
|    |       | 4.1.2    | Module inputs and parameters at a glance | 59 |
|    |       | 4.1.3    | Events                                   | 6  |
|    |       | 4.1.4    | Module outputs                           | 6  |
|    |       | 4.1.5    | Links to other modules                   | 6. |
|    |       | 4.1.6    | Getting help                             | 6. |
|    | 4.2   | Modul    | le manual                                | 62 |
|    |       | 4.2.1    | Detailed description                     | 62 |
|    |       | 4.2.2    | Initialization, inputs and parameters    | 63 |
|    |       |          | 4.2.2.1 Input objects                    | 63 |
|    |       |          | 4.2.2.2 Parameters                       | 63 |
|    |       | 4.2.3    | Simulation flow                          | 66 |
|    | 4.3   | Usage    | example                                  | 67 |
|    |       | 4.3.1    | Load SpaDES and other packages           | 67 |

6 Contents

|   |     | 4.3.2   | Get mod<br>rectories | ule, necessary packages and set up folder di-                    | 67         |
|---|-----|---------|----------------------|--|------------|
|   |     | 4.3.3   | Setup sin            | nulation   | 68         |
|   |     | 4.3.4   | Run mod              | lule   | 69         |
|   | 4.4 | Refere  | nces                 |  | 70         |
| 5 | Lan | dR Biom | ass_boreal           | DataPrep Module  | 71         |
|   |     |         | 5.0.0.1              | Authors:   | 71         |
|   | 5.1 | Modul   | le Overviev          | <i>w</i>   | 71         |
|   |     | 5.1.1   | Quick lir            | nks  | 71         |
|   |     | 5.1.2   |                      | у  | 72         |
|   |     | 5.1.3   | Links to             | other modules  | 72         |
|   | 5.2 | Modul   | le manual            |  | 73         |
|   |     | 5.2.1   | General              | functioning  | 73         |
|   |     | 5.2.2   | Data acq             | uisition and treatment   | 74         |
|   |     |         | 5.2.2.1              | Defining simulation pixels and ecolocations                      | <b>7</b> 5 |
|   |     |         | 5.2.2.2              | Species cover  | 76         |
|   |     |         | 5.2.2.3              | Initial species age and biomass per pixel                        | 76         |
|   |     |         | 5.2.2.4              | Replacing initial biomass and age within known fire perimeters   | 77         |
|   |     |         | 5.2.2.5              | Invariant species traits   | 78         |
|   |     |         | 5.2.2.6              | Probabilities of germination                                     | 79         |
|   |     | 5.2.3   | Paramet              | er estimation/calibration  | 79         |
|   |     |         | 5.2.3.1              | Adjustment of initial species biomass                            | 79         |
|   |     |         | 5.2.3.2              | Maximum biomass and maximum aboveground net primary productivity | 80         |
|   |     |         | 5.2.3.3              | Species establishment probability                                | 83         |
|   |     |         | 5.2.3.4              | Ecolocation-specific parameter – minimum relative biomass        | 84         |

Contents 7

|   |     |         | 5.2.3.5     | Calibrating species growth/mortality                       |     |
|---|-----|---------|-------------|--|-----|
|   |     |         |             | traits using Biomass_speciesParameters                     | 85  |
|   |     | 5.2.4   | Aggrega     | ting species   | 86  |
|   |     | 5.2.5   | List of in  | put objects  | 88  |
|   |     | 5.2.6   | List of pa  | arameters  | 98  |
|   |     | 5.2.7   | List of o   | ıtputs   | 106 |
|   |     | 5.2.8   | Simulati    | on flow and module events                                  | 109 |
|   | 5.3 | Usage   | example     |  | 110 |
|   | 5.4 | Refere  | nces        |  | 110 |
| 6 | Lan | dR Biom | ass_core N  | Iodule   | 113 |
|   |     |         | 6.0.0.1     | Authors:   | 113 |
|   | 6.1 | Modul   | le Overviev | <i>N</i>   | 113 |
|   |     | 6.1.1   | Quick lir   | nks  | 113 |
|   |     | 6.1.2   | Summar      | у  | 114 |
|   |     | 6.1.3   | Links to    | other modules  | 115 |
|   | 6.2 | Modul   | le manual   |  | 117 |
|   |     | 6.2.1   | General     | functioning  | 117 |
|   |     | 6.2.2   | Initialisa  | ation, inputs and parameters                               | 118 |
|   |     |         | 6.2.2.1     | Initial cohort biomass and age                             | 119 |
|   |     |         | 6.2.2.2     | Invariant species traits                                   | 120 |
|   |     |         | 6.2.2.3     | Spatio-temporally varying species traits .                 | 123 |
|   |     |         | 6.2.2.4     | Ecolocation-specific parameters – minimum relative biomass | 124 |
|   |     |         | 6.2.2.5     | Probabilities of germination                               | 124 |
|   |     |         | 6.2.2.6     | Other module inputs  | 125 |
|   |     | 6.2.3   | List of in  | put objects  | 125 |
|   |     | 6.2.4   | List of pa  | arameters  | 135 |
|   |     | 625     | List of or  | itnute   | 145 |

| 8 C | ontents |
|-----|---------|
|-----|---------|

|   |         | 6.2.6   | Simulation flow and module events   | 149 |
|---|---------|---------|---|-----|
|   |         | 6.2.7   | Differences between <i>Biomass_core</i> and the LANDIS-II Biomass Succession Extension model (LBSE) | 150 |
|   |         |         | 6.2.7.1 Algorithm changes   | 150 |
|   |         |         | 6.2.7.2 Other enhancements  | 154 |
|   |         |         | 6.2.7.3 Performance and accuracy of Biomass_core with respect to LBSE                               | 157 |
|   | 6.3     | Usage   | example   | 159 |
|   |         | 6.3.1   | Set up R libraries  | 159 |
|   |         | 6.3.2   | Get the module and module dependencies  | 160 |
|   |         | 6.3.3   | Setup simulation  | 161 |
|   |         | 6.3.4   | Run simulation  | 163 |
|   | 6.4     | Appen   | dix   | 164 |
|   |         | 6.4.1   | Tables  | 164 |
|   | 6.5     | Refere  | ences   | 176 |
| 7 | Lan     | dR Biom | nass_regeneration Module  | 179 |
|   |         |         | 7.0.0.1 Authors:  | 179 |
|   | 7.1     | Modul   | le Overview   | 179 |
|   |         | 7.1.1   | Module summary  | 179 |
|   |         | 7.1.2   | General flow of Biomass_regeneration processes - fire disturbances only                             | 181 |
|   |         | 7.1.3   | Module inputs and parameters  | 181 |
|   |         | 7.1.4   | Module outputs  | 181 |
|   |         | 7.1.5   | Links to other modules  | 182 |
|   | 7.2     | Gettin  | g help  | 182 |
| W | ildfire | e submo | odel .  | 183 |

| 8  | Land   | dMine Module |  |     |  |  |  |
|----|--------|--------------|--|-----|--|--|--|
|    |        |              | 8.0.0.1 Authors:                         | 185 |  |  |  |
|    | 8.1    | Module       | e Overview                               | 185 |  |  |  |
|    |        | 8.1.1        | Module summary                           | 185 |  |  |  |
|    |        | 8.1.2        | Model Differences                        | 185 |  |  |  |
|    |        | 8.1.3        | Known Species                            | 186 |  |  |  |
|    |        | 8.1.4        | Module inputs and parameters             | 187 |  |  |  |
|    |        | 8.1.5        | Module outputs                           | 187 |  |  |  |
|    | 8.2    | Usage        |  | 188 |  |  |  |
|    |        | 8.2.1        | Package dependencies                     | 188 |  |  |  |
|    |        | 8.2.2        | Module usage                             | 189 |  |  |  |
|    | 8.3    | Testing      | the burn algorithm                       | 191 |  |  |  |
|    | 8.4    | Optimi       | izing parameters                         | 192 |  |  |  |
|    |        | 8.4.1        | Visual examination                       | 193 |  |  |  |
|    | 8.5    | Alterna      | te optimization                          | 194 |  |  |  |
|    |        | 8.5.1        | Visual examination                       | 195 |  |  |  |
|    | 8.6    | Manua        | l inspection of optimization results     | 196 |  |  |  |
|    |        | 8.6.1        | Original (2018) version                  | 196 |  |  |  |
|    |        | 8.6.2        | Current (2022) version                   | 200 |  |  |  |
|    |        | 8.6.3        | Cleaning up                              | 201 |  |  |  |
|    |        | 8.6.4        | Code and data availability               | 201 |  |  |  |
|    |        | 8.6.5        | Links to other modules                   | 202 |  |  |  |
| Mo | odel o | utputs       |  | 203 |  |  |  |
|    | 8.7    | Curren       | itly Selected Spatial Area               | 203 |  |  |  |
|    | 8.8    | Large F      | Patches Data for study region            | 203 |  |  |  |
|    | 8.9    | Leadin       | g Vegetation Cover Data for study region | 203 |  |  |  |
|    | 8.10   | Simula       | tion Rasters (cropped to study region)   | 204 |  |  |  |
|    | 8.11   | Additio      | onal R Data Files (advanced users)       | 204 |  |  |  |

| 10 |      |         |                              | Contents |
|----|------|---------|------------------------------|----------|
| 9  | burn | Summa   | ries Module                  | 205      |
|    |      |         | 9.0.0.1 Authors:             | . 205    |
|    | 9.1  | Module  | e Overview                   | . 205    |
|    |      | 9.1.1   | Module summary               | . 205    |
|    |      | 9.1.2   | Module inputs and parameters | . 205    |
|    |      | 9.1.3   | Events                       | . 206    |
|    |      | 9.1.4   | Plotting                     | . 206    |
|    |      | 9.1.5   | Saving                       | . 206    |
|    |      | 9.1.6   | Module outputs               | . 206    |
|    |      | 9.1.7   | Links to other modules       | . 206    |
|    |      | 9.1.8   | Getting help                 | . 207    |
| 10 | Land | lWeb_ou | utput Module                 | 209      |
|    |      |         | 10.0.0.1 Authors:            | . 209    |
|    | 10.1 | Module  | e Overview                   | . 209    |
|    |      | 10.1.1  | Module summary               | . 209    |
|    |      | 10.1.2  | Module inputs and parameters | . 209    |
|    |      | 10.1.3  | Module outputs               | . 210    |
|    |      | 10.1.4  | Links to other modules       | . 210    |
|    |      | 10.1.5  | Getting help                 | . 210    |
| 11 | time | SinceFi | re Module                    | 211      |
|    |      |         | 11.0.0.1 Authors:            | . 211    |
|    | 11.1 | Module  | e Overview                   | . 211    |
|    |      | 11.1.1  | Module summary               |          |
|    |      | 11.1.2  | Module inputs and parameters |          |
|    |      | 11.1.3  | Events                       | . 212    |

212

213

11.1.3.1

11.1.3.2

| Contents | 11 |
|----------|----|
|----------|----|

|    |        |          | 11.1.3.3 Saving           |                            | 213 |
|----|--------|----------|---------------------------|----------------------------|-----|
|    |        |          | 11.1.3.4 Age              |                            | 213 |
|    |        | 11.1.4   | Module outputs            |                            | 213 |
|    |        | 11.1.5   | Code and data availabilit | ty                         | 213 |
|    |        | 11.1.6   | Links to other modules    |                            | 214 |
| 12 | Land   | lWeb_sı  | mmary Module              |                            | 215 |
|    |        |          | 12.0.0.1 Authors:         |                            | 215 |
|    | 12.1   | Modul    | Overview                  |                            | 215 |
|    |        | 12.1.1   | Module summary            |                            | 215 |
|    |        | 12.1.2   | Module inputs and parar   | meters                     | 215 |
|    |        | 12.1.3   | Module outputs            |                            | 216 |
|    |        |          | 12.1.3.1 Large Patches    | Data for study region      | 216 |
|    |        |          |                           | ation Cover Data for study | 216 |
|    |        | 12.1.4   | Links to other modules    |                            | 216 |
|    |        | 12.1.5   |                           |                            | 217 |
| W  | eb app | )        |                           |                            | 219 |
| 13 | Mod    | ifying L | ndWeb                     |                            | 221 |
|    | 13.1   | Examp    | e 1: adding new reporting | g polygons                 | 221 |
|    |        | 13.1.1   | National-scale polygons   |                            | 222 |
|    |        | 13.1.2   | Regional or study-area-s  | specific polygons          | 223 |
|    | 13.2   | Examp    | e 2: adding a new study a | ırea                       | 224 |
|    | 13.3   | Examp    | e 3: updating the LTHFC   | map                        | 226 |
|    | 13.4   | Contri   | uting changes             |                            | 226 |
| Re | feren  | ces      |                           |                            | 227 |

## List of Figures

| 1   | LandWeb study area (blue) with mountain and boreal caribou ranges highlighted (pink).  | 24  |
|-----|--|-----|
| 1.1 | Screenshot showing showing code commits in Git Kraken. The submodules pane is highlighted on the bottom left   | 40  |
| 4.1 | Biomass_speciesData automatically generates a plot of species dominance and number of presences in the study area when '.plotInitialTime=1' is passed as an argument   | 69  |
| 5.1 | Modelling biomass as a linear vs. exponential relationship. a) 'modelBiomass' as 'B logAge * speciesCode + cover * speciesCode + (logAge + cover   ecoregionGroup)'. b) 'modelBiomass' as 'logB logAge * speciesCode + cover * speciesCode + (logAge + cover   ecoregionGroup)'. Blue dots are marginal mean B values (back-transformed in b) cross ages with confidence intervals as the bars | 82  |
| 5.2 | Thirty years of simulation with 'maxB' values estimated from a 'logB' 'biomassModel' (see Fig. reffig:fig-biomassModelLogBtest). The steep increase in such little time is abnormal  | 82  |
| 6.1 | Biomass_core simulates tree cohort growth, mortality, recruitment and dispersal dynamics, as a function of cohort ageing and competition for light (shading) and space, as well as disturbances like fire (simulated using other modules).   | 115 |

14 List of Figures

| 0.2 | using two different input species orders for the same community. These simulations demonstrate how the sequential calculation of the competition index, combined with a lack of explicit species ordering affect the overall landscape aboveground biomass in time when using different input species orders (see Table reftab:tableLBSEtest1). In order to prevent differences introduced by cohort recruitment, species' ages at sexual maturity were changed to the species' longevity values, and the simulation ran for 75 years to prevent any cohorts from reaching sexual maturity. The bottom panel shows the difference between the two simulations in percentage, calculated as $\frac{Biomass_{order2} - Biomass_{order1}}{Biomass_{order2}}*100$ | 152 |
|-----|---|-----|
| 6.3 | Differences in the biomass assigned to new cohorts, summed for each species across pixels, when using two different input species orders for the same community and when the succession time step is 1. These simulations demonstrate how the different summation of total cohort biomass for a succession time step of 1 and the lack of explicit species ordering affect simulation results when changing the species order in the input file (see Table reftab:tableLBSEtest2). Here, initial cohort ages were also set to 1. Values refer to the initial total biomass attributed to each species at the end of year 1  | 153 |
| 6.4 | Hashing design for <i>Biomass_core</i> . In the re-coded <i>Biomass_core</i> , the pixel group map was hashed based on the unique combination of species composition ('community map') and ecolocation map, and associated with a lookup table. The insert in the top-right corner was the original design that linked the map to the lookup table by pixel key.  | 156 |
| 6.5 | Visual comparison of simulation outputs for three randomly generated initial communities (left panels) and difference between those outputs (right panels). The % difference between LBSE and $Biomass\_core$ were calculated as $\frac{Biomass_{LBSE} - Biomass_{Biomass_{core}}}{Biomass_{LBSE}} * 100 \dots \dots$   | 158 |

List of Figures 15

| 6.6 | Simulation efficiencies of LBSE and <i>Biomass_core</i> with increasing map size, in terms of a) mean running time across repetitions (left y-axis) and the ratio LBSE to <i>Biomass_core</i> running times (right y-axis and blue line), and b) running time scalability as the mean running time per 1000 pixels. | 159 |
|-----|---|-----|
| 6.7 | Biomass_core automatically generates simulation visuals of species dynamics across the landscape in terms of total biomass, number of presences and age and productivity (above), as well as yearly plots of total biomass, productivity, mortality, reproduction and leading species in each pixel                 |     |
|     | (below)   | 163 |

| 1.1 | LandWeb project directory structure  | 39 |
|-----|--|----|
| 2.1 | FMA polygon IDs (from Figure 1) and their corresponding FMA names.   | 45 |
| 2.2 | Model study areas with corresponding FMA polygon IDs (from Figure 1)   | 47 |
| 4.1 | List of Biomass_speciesData input objects and their description.   | 60 |
| 4.2 | List of Biomass_speciesData parameters and their description.  | 60 |
| 4.3 | List of Biomass_speciesData output objects and their description.  | 61 |
| 4.4 | List of species cover data downloaded by default by Biomass_speciesData  | 64 |
| 4.5 | List of Biomass_speciesData input objects and their description.   | 65 |
| 4.6 | Example of species merging for simulation. Here the user wants to model <i>Abies balsamea</i> , <i>A. lasiocarpa</i> and <i>Pinus contorta</i> as separate species, but all <i>Picea spp.</i> as a genus-level group. For this, all six species are identified in the KNNcolumn, so that their % cover layers can be obtained, but in the Borealcolumn (which defines the naming convention used in the simulation in this example) all <i>Picea spp.</i> have the same name. <i>Biomass_speciesData</i> will merge their % cover data into a single layer by summing their cover per pixel. | 65 |
| 4.7 | List of <i>Biomass speciesData</i> parameters and their description.   | 65 |

| 5.1 | Example of species merging for simulation. Here the user wants to model <i>Abies balsamea</i> , <i>A. lasiocarpa</i> and <i>Pinus contorta</i> as separate species, but all <i>Picea spp.</i> as a genus-level group. For this, all six species are identified in the 'KNN' column, so that their % cover layers can be obtained, but in the 'Boreal' column (which defines the naming convention used in the simulation in this example) all <i>Picea spp.</i> have the same name. <i>Biomass_borealDataPrep</i> will merge their % cover data into a single layer by summing their cover per pixel. (continued below) | 87  |
|-----|---|-----|
| 5.3 | List of Biomass_borealDataPrep input objects and their description  | 90  |
| 5.4 | List of Biomass_borealDataPrep parameters and their description.  | 99  |
| 5.5 | List of Biomass_borealDataPrep output objects and their description   | 107 |
| 6.1 | Example of an invariant species traits table (the species table object in the module), with species Abies sp. (Abie_sp), Picea engelmannii (Pice_eng), Picea glauca (Pice_gla), Pinus sp. (Pinu_sp), Populus sp. (Popu_sp) and Pseudotsuga menziesii (Pseu_men). Note that these are theoretical values. (continued below)  | 121 |
| 6.2 | Table continues below   | 121 |
| 6.4 | Example of a spatio-temporally varying species traits table (the speciesEcoregion table object in the module), with two ecolocations (called ecoregionGroups) and species Abies sp. (Abie_sp), Picea engelmannii (Pice_eng), Picea glauca (Pice_gla), Pinus sp. (Pinu_sp), Populus sp. (Popu_sp) and Pseudotsuga menziesii (Pseu_men). If a simulation runs for 10 year using this table, trait values from year 2 would be used during simulation years 2-10   | 123 |
| 6.5 | Example of a minimum relative biomass table (the minRel-  | 123 |
| 0.5 | ativeB table object in the module), with two ecolocations (ecoregionGroups) sharing the same values   | 124 |

| 6.6  | Default species probability of germination values used by <i>Biomass_core</i> and <i>Biomass_borealDataPrep</i> . Columns XO-X5 are different site shade levels and each line has the probability of germination for each site shade and species shade tolerance combination.   | 125 |
|------|---|-----|
| 6.7  | List of Biomass_core input objects and their description  | 129 |
| 6.8  | List of Biomass_core parameters and their description   | 137 |
| 6.9  | List of Biomass_core output objects and their description   | 145 |
| 6.10 | Input order and processing order (as determined by LBSE) for the same community used to assess the impact of sequential calculation of the competition index, combined with a lack of explicit species ordering. The input order was the order of species in the initial communities table input file. The processing order was the order used in the simulation, which was obtained from Landis-log.txt when CalibrateMode was set to 'yes'. Species starting ages are also shown. (continued below) | 165 |
| 6.12 | Input order and processing order (as determined by LBSE) for the same community used to assess the impact of setting the succession time step to 1, combined with a lack of explicit species ordering. The input order was the order of species in the initial communities table input file. The processing order was the order used in the simulation, which was obtained from Landis-log.txt when CalibrateMode was set to 'yes'. Species starting ages are also shown. (continued below)           | 167 |
| 6.14 | Randomly generated community combination no. 1 used in the recruitment comparison runs  | 169 |
| 6.15 | Randomly generated community combination no. 2 used in the recruitment comparison runs  | 170 |
| 6.16 | Randomly generated community combination no. 3 used in the recruitment comparison runs  | 172 |
| 6.17 | Invariant species traits table used in comparison runs. (continued below)   | 174 |
| 6.19 | Minimum relative biomass table used in comparison runs. XO-5 represent site shade classes from no-shade (0) to maximum shade (5). All ecolocations shared the same values.  | 175 |

| 6.20 | Probability of germination for species shade tolerance and shade level combinations (called <i>sufficient light</i> table in LBSE and sufficientLight input data.table in LandR <i>Biomass_core</i> ) used in comparison runs    | 175 |
|------|--|-----|
| 6.21 | Species ecolocation table used in comparison runs. SEP stands for species establishment probability, maxB for maximum biomass and maxANPP for maximum aboveground net primary productivity. Values were held constant throughout | 175 |
|      | the simulation.  | 175 |
| 7.1  | List of Biomass_regeneration input objects and their description.  | 181 |
| 7.2  | List of Biomass_regeneration parameters and their descrip-   |     |
|      | tion   | 181 |
| 7.3  | List of Biomass_regeneration outputs and their description   | 181 |
| 8.1  | LandMine species codes   | 186 |
| 8.2  | List of LandMine input objects and their description   | 187 |
| 8.3  | List of LandMine parameters and their description  | 187 |
| 8.4  | List of LandMine outputs and their description   | 187 |
| 9.1  | List of burnSummaries input objects and their description  | 205 |
| 9.2  | List of burnSummaries parameters and their description   | 206 |
| 9.3  | List of burnSummaries outputs and their description  | 206 |
| 10.1 | List of LandWeb_output input objects and their description.  | 209 |
| 10.2 | List of <i>LandWeb_output</i> parameters and their description   | 210 |
| 10.3 | List of LandWeb_output outputs and their description   | 210 |
| 11.1 | List of timeSinceFire input objects and their description  | 212 |
| 11.2 | List of timeSinceFire parameters and their description   | 212 |
| 11.3 | List of <i>timeSinceFire</i> outputs and their description   | 213 |

| List of Tab | ist of Tables  |     |
|-------------|--|-----|
| 12.1        | List of LandWeb_summary input objects and their description. | 215 |
| 12.2        | List of LandWeb_summary parameters and their description.    | 216 |
| 12.3        | List of LandWeb_summary outputs and their description        | 216 |

#### **Overview**

This manual is a live document which is automatically updated as changes are made to underlying model code and documentation.

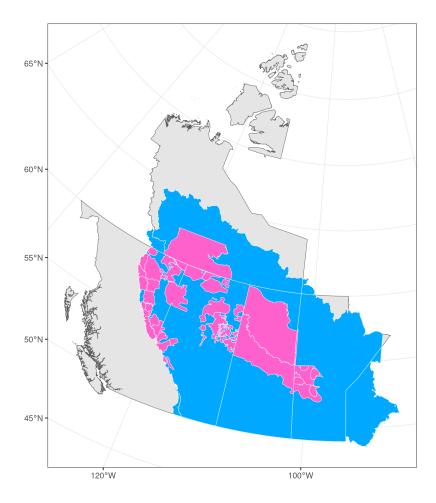
#### 0.1 Background

#### 0.2 The LandWeb Model

LandWeb is the first large scale, data-driven approach to simulating historic natural range of variation (H/NRV) (https://landweb.ca). In developing the model, analyses, as well as the infrastructure to host data, we strove to implement a single, reproducible workflow to facilitate running simulations, analyses, and model reuse and future expansion. This tight linkage between data and simulation model is made possible via its implementation using the Spades family of packages [8] within the R Statistical Language and Environment [16]. For more information about Spades, see https://spades.predictiveecology.org/.

The LandWeb model integrates two well-used models for forest stand succession and wildfire simulation, implemented in the SpaDES simulation platform as a collection of submodels (implement as SpaDES modules). Vegetation dynamics are modeled using the LandR Biomass suite of modules, which reimplement the LANDIS-II Biomass Succession model [22, 17] in R. Wildfire dynamics are modeled using an implementation of LandMine [1, 2]. Simulations were run for the entire LandWeb study area, which spans most of the western Canadian boreal forest. A summary of the results are presented using a web app, which can be run locally.

24 Overview



**FIGURE 1:** LandWeb study area (blue) with mountain and boreal caribou ranges highlighted (pink).

#### 0.2.1 Data preparation

Input data were derived from multiple sources, including several publicly available as well as proprietary datasets.

Detailed descriptions of these sources are provided in the relevant sections of this manual.

#### 0.2.1.1 Public data sources

- Land Cover Classification 2005 map (no longer available from Government of Canada's Open Data website);
- LANDIS-II species traits: https://github.com/dcyr/LANDIS-II\_IA\_generalUseFiles;
- LANDIS-II parameterization tables and data: https://github.com/ LANDIS-II-Foundation/Extensions-Succession-Archive/master/ biomass-succession-archive/trunk/tests/v6.0-2.0/;
- Canada biomass, stand volume, and species data [from 4]: http://tree. pfc.forestry.ca;
- National ecodistrict polygons: http://sis.agr.gc.ca/cansis/nsdb/ecostrat/ district/ecodistrict\_shp.zip;
- National ecoregion polygons: http://sis.agr.gc.ca/cansis/nsdb/ecostrat/ region/ecoregion\_shp.zip;
- National ecozone polygons: http://sis.agr.gc.ca/cansis/nsdb/ecostrat/zone/ecozone\_shp.zip.

#### 0.2.1.2 Proprietary data sources

All proprietary data used by for the model are stored in an access-controlled Google Drive location.

- biomass by species maps created by Pickell & Coops [15] resolution 100m
   x 100m from LandSat and kNN based on CASFRI;
- various reporting polygons used to summarize model results in the app.

To request access, please contact Alex Chubaty (achubaty@for-cast.ca<sup>1</sup>).

#### 0.2.2 Vegetation dynamics

Vegetation growth and succession are modeled using a re-implementation of the LANDIS-II Biomass model, a widely used and well-documented dynamic vegetation succession model [22, 17]. Our re-implemented model

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>mailto:achubaty@for-cast.ca

26 Overview

largely follows the original LANDIS-II source code (v 3.6.2; Scheller and Miranda [20]), but with some modifications with respect to species traits parameterization. This model simulates landscape-scale forest dynamics in a spatio-temporally explicit manner, using cohorts of tree species within each pixel. Multiple ecological processes are captured by the model, including vegetation growth, mortality, seed dispersal, and post-disturbance regeneration.

This submodel is described in further detail in Vegetation submodel.

#### 0.2.3 Wildfire dynamics

Wildfire is simulated using a re-implementation of the fire submodel of Andison's [1, 2] LandMine model of landscape disturbance.

This submodel is described in further detail in Wildfire submodel.

#### 0.2.4 Summary maps and statistics

Summaries are derived from simulation outputs, and consist of maps showing the time since fire as well as histogram summaries of 1) number of large patches (i.e., patches above the number of hectares specified by the user) contained within the selected spatial area; and 2) the vegetation cover within the selected spatial area. Histograms are provided for each spatial area by polygon, age class, and species. Authorized users can additionally overlay current stand conditions onto these histograms. Simulation outputs are summarized for several publicly available reporting polygons (including Alberta Natural Ecoregions and Caribou Ranges).

These are described in further detail in Model outputs.

#### 0.2.5 LandWeb app

Using the web app is described in Web app.

#### 0.3 Previous Manual Versions

If available, archived copies of previous manual versions are provided at the links below.

• LandR Manual v3.0.0<sup>2</sup> (current)

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup>archive/pdf/LandWeb-manual-v3.0.0.pdf

### Getting started

#### 1.1 Prerequisites

#### Minimum system requirements:

- Windows 10, macOS 10.13 High Sierra, or Ubuntu 20.04 LTS;
- 20 GB of storage space, plus additional storage for model outputs;
- 128 GB RAM to run the model over the full area (less for sub-areas);
- High-speed internet connection.

The following section provides details on installing prerequisite software for running LandWeb.

#### 1.1.1 Docker

#### If you prefer to not use Docker, skip this subsection.

Due to idiosyncratic difficulties of installing multiple pieces of software and ensuring the correct versions are used throughout, we provide prebuilt Docker<sup>1</sup> images, which better provides a consistent and reproducible software environment for running the model.

Thus, using these images are preferred over 'bare-metal' installation.

Install Docker for your system following https://docs.docker.com/get-docker/.

Next, pull the image from Docker Hub:

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>https://www.docker.com/

30 1 Getting started

```
## get the image
docker pull achubaty/landweb-standalone:latest

## launch a new container based on this image
docker run -d -it \
   -e GITHUB_PAT=$(cat ${HOME}/.Renviron | grep GITHUB_PAT | cut
   -d '=' -f 2) \
   -e PASSWORD='<mySecretPassword>' \
   --memory=128g \
   --cpus=32 \
   -p 127.0.0.1:8080:8787 \
   --name LandWeb \
   achubaty/landweb-standalone:latest
```

Once the container is running, open your web browser and go to local-host:8080.

Login to the Rstudio session as user rstudio and password <mySecretPassword> (change this password when launching container above).

Once finished, you can stop and destroy the container:

```
docker stop LandWeb
docker rm LandWeb
```

#### 1.1.2 Bare metal installation

#### 1.1.2.1 Development tools

#### 1.1.2.1.1 Windows

- Download Rtools version 4.2 from https://cran.r-project.org/bin/windows/Rtools/rtools42/rtools.html and install it as administrator. Rtools provides the necessary compilers etc. to build and install R packages from source on Windows.
  - a. During installation, be sure to check the option to add Rtools to your PATH.

1.1 Prerequisites 31

2. Download and install a proper text editor, *e.g.* Notepad++ (https://notepad-plus-plus.org/downloads/).

```
1.1.2.1.2 macOS
```

#### 1.1.2.1.2.1 Xcode command line tools

To build software, you will need the Xcode command line tools<sup>2</sup>, which include various compilers and git version control software.

```
xcode-select --install
```

#### 1.1.2.1.2.2 homebrew package manager

Next, install homebrew which provides a package manager for macOS. This will facilitate software updates and will handle various package dependency issues automatically.

```
/bin/bash -c "$(curl -fsSL
https://raw.githubusercontent.com/Homebrew/install/HEAD/install.sh
)"
```

#### 1.1.2.1.3 Ubuntu Linux

```
sudo apt-get update

sudo apt-get -y install \
   build-essential \
   biber \
   ccache \
   cmake \
   curl \
```

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup>https://developer.apple.com/downloads/

32 1 Getting started

```
libarchive-dev \
libcairo2-dev \
libcurl4-openssl-dev \
libgit2-dev \
libglpk-dev \
libgmp3-dev \
libicu-dev \
libjq-dev \
libmagick++-dev \
libnode-dev \
libpng-dev \
libprotobuf-dev \
libprotoc-dev \
libssh2-1-dev \
libssl-dev \
libxml2-dev \
libxt-dev \
make \
p7zip-full p7zip-rar \
pandoc pandoc-citeproc \
protobuf-compiler \
qpdf \
screen \
sysstat \
texinfo texlive-base texlive-bibtex-extra \
texlive-fonts-extra texlive-latex-extra texlive-xetex \
wget \
xauth \
xfonts-base \
xvfb \
zlib1g-dev
```

#### 1.1.2.2 Geospatial libraries

In order to work with geospatial data, recent versions of GDAL, PROJ, and GEOS geospatial libraries need to be available on your system.

1.1 Prerequisites 33

#### 1.1.2.2.1 Windows

No additional should be needed, as recent versions of R geospatial packages include pre-bundled versions of GDAL, PROJ, and GEOS.

#### 1.1.2.2.2 macOS

Use homebrew to install the required geospatial software libraries:

```
brew install pkg-config
brew install gdal
# brew install geos
# brew install proj
brew install udunits
```

#### 1.1.2.2.3 Ubuntu Linux

The default Ubuntu 20.04 LTS package repositories ship older versions of the geospatial libraries we will be using, so we will need to to add some additional repositories to get the latest versions.

```
## add GIS repository
sudo add-apt-repository ppa:ubuntugis-unstable/ppa
sudo apt-get update
```

Install additional system dependencies that serve as prerequisites for running the LandWeb model in R.

```
sudo apt-get -y install \
    gdal-bin \
    libgdal-dev \
    libgeos-dev \
    libproj-dev \
    libudunits2-dev \
    python3-gdal
```

34 1 Getting started

Optionally, we install mapshaper geospatial library which is used to speed up polygon simplification.

```
## mapshaper installation
sudo apt-get remove -y libnode-dev

curl -sL https://deb.nodesource.com/setup_20.x | sudo -E bash -

sudo apt install nodejs
sudo npm install npm@latest -g
sudo npm install -g mapshaper
```

#### 1.1.2.3 Version control

git is the version control software used throughout this project, and is required to 'checkout' specific versions of the code as well as to make changes and 'push' these changes to the model code repository.

1. Install the latest version of git from https://git-scm.com/downloads or via your package manager.

Windows users should install as administrator. Use nano (instead of vi/vim) as the default text editor. For all other choices, use the recommended settings.

For macOS users, git is included with the Xcode command line tools.

2. Create a GitHub (https://github.com) account if you don't already have one, and configure a Personal Access Token (PAT).

A GitHub (https://github.com) account is required to assist with package installation and accessing model code.

Several packages used by LandWeb are only available on GitHub. Because we will be installing several of these, we want to ensure we can do so without GitHub rate-limiting our requests. Without a PAT, some packages may temporarily fail to install, but can be retried a little later (usually 1 hour).

a. Create a GitHub Personal Acess Token (PAT):

1.1 Prerequisites 35

b. either 'manually' following the instructions<sup>3</sup>, making sure to check the repo, workflow, and user: email scopes;

ii. or directly from an R session:

```
'``r
# install.packages("usethis")
usethis::create_github_token()
```
```

b. Securely store this token using the credential store, from an R session:

#### Storing GitHub credentials in . Renviron is no longer recommended.

See https://usethis.r-lib.org/articles/git-credentials.html.

3. *Optional*. Install the latest version of GitKraken from https://www.gitkraken.com/download/.

The free version is sufficient to access the public repositories used in this project. However, the paid pro version is required to access private repositories.

#### 1.1.2.4 R and Rstudio

1. Download and install R version 4.2.3.

 $<sup>^3</sup>https://docs.github.com/en/authentication/keeping-your-account-and-data-secure/creating-a-personal-access-token\\$ 

36 1 Getting started

#### Windows

- 1. Download R from https://cran.r-project.org/bin/windows/base/R-4.2.3-win.exe;
- 2. Install R as administrator.

#### macOS

1. Install rig (https://github.com/r-lib/rig) to manage multiple R installations.

```
brew tap r-lib/rig
brew install --cask rig

rig install 4.2.3

## start Rstudio using a specific R version:
rig rstudio ~/GitHub/LandWeb.Rproj 4.2.3
```

#### **Ubuntu Linux**

Use rig (https://github.com/r-lib/rig) to easily manage multiple R installations, and easily switch among them.

1. Add the apt repository and install rig:

```
## add apt repository
sudo curl -L https://rig.r-pkg.org/deb/rig.gpg -o
/etc/apt/trusted.gpg.d/rig.gpg
sudo sh -c "echo 'deb [arch=amd64] http://rig.r-pkg.org/deb rig
main' > /etc/apt/sources.list.d/rig.list"

## install (NB: rig is different package; use r-rig!)
sudo apt update
sudo apt install r-rig
```

1.2 Prerequisites 37

2. Install R version 4.2.3

```
rig add 4.2.3
rig system make-links
sudo ln -s /opt/R/4.2.3/bin/Rscript /usr/local/bin/Rscript-4.2.3
rig list
```

2. Download and install the latest version of Rstudio from https://www.rstudio.com/products/rstudio/download/.

Windows users should install Rstudio as administrator.

3. (optional) On Linux, configure ccache to speed up R package reinstallation and updates<sup>4</sup>.

```
## configure ccache for R package installation
mkdir -p ~/.ccache
mkdir -p ~/.R
{ echo 'VER='; \
    echo 'CCACHE=ccache'; \
    echo 'CC*$(CCACHE) gcc$(VER)'; \
    echo 'CXX=$(CCACHE) g++$(VER)'; \
    echo 'CXX11=$(CCACHE) g++$(VER)'; \
    echo 'CXX14=$(CCACHE) g++$(VER)'; \
    echo 'FC*$(CCACHE) gfortran$(VER)'; \
    echo 'F77=$(CCACHE) gfortran$(CCACHE) gfortran$(CCACHE) gfortran$(CCACHE) gfortran$(CCACHE) gfortran$(CCACHE) gfortran$(CCACHE) gfortran$(CCACHE) gfortran$(CCACHE) gfo
```

<sup>4</sup>http://dirk.eddelbuettel.com/blog/2017/11/27/#011\_faster\_package\_installation\_one

38 1 Getting started

# 1.2 Getting the code

All modules are written in R and all model code was developed collaboratively using GitHub (https://github.com), with each module contained in its own repository. Code that is shared among modules was bundled into R packages, and hosted in on GitHub repositories. All package code is automatically and regularly tested using cross-platform continuous integration frameworks to ensure the code is reliable and free of errors.

```
mkdir -p ~/GitHub

cd ~/GitHub

## get development branch (app and deploy are private
submodules)
git clone --recurse-submodules \
    -j8 https://github.com/PredictiveEcology/LandWeb
```

Windows users should ensure the GitHub/ directory is accessible at both ~/GitHub and ~/Documents/GitHub by creating a directory junction:

```
mklink /J C:\\Users\\username\\Documents\\GitHub
C:\\Users\\username\\GitHub
```

# 1.3 Project directory structure

Model code is organized by the following directories and summarized in the table below.

**NOTE:** it may be useful to store data in a different location, but to map this location back to the e.g., cache/, inputs/, and/or outputs/ directories using symbolic links. See R's ?file.link to set these up on your machine.

**TABLE 1.1:** LandWeb project directory structure

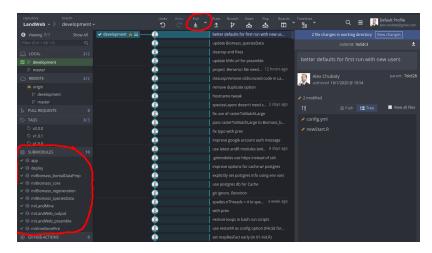
| directory   | description                                            |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| R/          | additional R helper scripts                            |
| batch_runs/ | scripts for running multiple simulations               |
| box/        | contains LandWeb config, used by the 'box' package     |
| cache/      | all per-run and per-study area cache files stored here |
| docker/     | Dockerfiles, scripts, and documentation                |
| docs/       | rendered model and app documentation                   |
| inputs/     | all model data inputs stored here                      |
| m/          | module code (git submodules)                           |
| manual/     | raw files for generating documentation manual          |
| outputs/    | all per-run model outputs stored here                  |
| renv/       | project package management directory                   |

# 1.4 Updating the code

After having cloned the LandWeb code repository, users can keep up-to-date using their preferred graphical git tools (e.g., GitKraken) or from the command line.

40 1 Getting started

# 1.4.1 Using GitKraken



**FIGURE 1.1:** Screenshot showing showing code commits in Git Kraken. The submodules pane is highlighted on the bottom left.

- 1. Open the LandWeb repo, and after a few moments you will see the commit history update to reflect the latest changes on the server.
- 2. 'Pull' in the latest changes to this repo, noting that the status of the git submodules (left hand side) may change.
- 3. If any submodules have changed status, for each one, right-click and select 'Update'.

# 1.4.2 Using the command line

**WARNING:** experienced git users only!

```
git pull
git submodule update
```

# 1.5 Data requirements

In order to access and use the proprietary data in LandWeb simulations, you will need to be granted access to the shared Google Drive directory. During first-run of the model, all required data will be downloaded to the inputs/directory.

To request access, please contact Alex Chubaty (achubaty@for-cast.ca<sup>5</sup>).

# 1.6 Getting help

• https://github.com/PredictiveEcology/LandWeb/issues

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>5</sup>mailto:achubaty@for-cast.ca

# Running LandWeb

 Launch Rstudio and open the LandWeb Rstudio project (LandWeb.Rproj);

Be sure to use R 4.2.3 when running the model!

If using rig to manage multiple R versions, use the following to launch Rstudio with the correct version of R:

```
cd ~/GitHub/LandWeb
rig rstudio renv.lock
```

2. Open the file 00-global.R and run each line in sequence, responding to any prompts as required.

Before you can run the model, you first need to install the packages required for the project by restoring from the project's snapshot file.

```
options(
  renv.config.mran.enabled = FALSE,
  renv.config.pak.enabled = FALSE
)
renv::restore()
```

# 2.1 Model setup and configuration

The default settings for study area, model version, and scenario are defined in Ola-globalvars.R. These defaults are defined as 'dot-variables' (e.g.,

.studyAreaName) and can be set externally to the main script (e.g., if .studyAreaName is defined before running Ola-globalvars.R, then the user-set value will be used, rather than the default defined in that script).

Advanced setup and model run customization is described in Advanced setup.

## 2.1.1 Select a study area

The model can be run over the entire study area, for certain individual provinces (currently only AB, SK, MB, NWT), or groups of predefined FMAs (see Fig. 1 and Table 1).

### 2.1.1.1 FMA boundaries

Currently, only a subset of the FMAs within the LandWeb study area are predefined to be run on their own (i.e., without needing to run the model over the entire study area; see Table 2).

**TABLE 2.1:** FMA polygon IDs (from Figure 1) and their corresponding FMA names.

| 1 Cranbrook 2 Fort Nelson 3 Mackenzie 4 Prince George 5 Fort St. John 6 Dawson Creek 7 Island Forests 8 Turtleford 9 Prince Albert 10 Kelvington 11 Island Forests 12 Northern Reconnaisance 13 Turnor East 14 Turnor West 15 Mistik 16 Mee-Toos 17 Kitsaki Zelensky 18 Nemeiben 19 Meadow Lake Fringe 20 Suggi Lowlands 21 Pasquia-Porcupine 22 Meadow Lake OSB 23 L M Wood Products |  |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|
| Mackenzie Prince George Fort St. John  Dawson Creek Island Forests Turtleford Prince Albert Kelvington  Island Forests Northern Reconnaisance Turnor East Turnor West Mistik  Mee-Toos Kitsaki Zelensky Nemeiben Meadow Lake Fringe Suggi Lowlands  L M Wood Products                                                                                                                 |  |
| 4 Prince George 5 Fort St. John 6 Dawson Creek 7 Island Forests 8 Turtleford 9 Prince Albert 10 Kelvington 11 Island Forests 12 Northern Reconnaisance 13 Turnor East 14 Turnor West 15 Mistik 16 Mee-Toos 17 Kitsaki Zelensky 18 Nemeiben 19 Meadow Lake Fringe 20 Suggi Lowlands 21 Pasquia-Porcupine 22 Meadow Lake OSB 23 L M Wood Products                                       |  |
| 5 Fort St. John 6 Dawson Creek 7 Island Forests 8 Turtleford 9 Prince Albert 10 Kelvington 11 Island Forests 12 Northern Reconnaisance 13 Turnor East 14 Turnor West 15 Mistik 16 Mee-Toos 17 Kitsaki Zelensky 18 Nemeiben 19 Meadow Lake Fringe 20 Suggi Lowlands 21 Pasquia-Porcupine 22 Meadow Lake OSB 23 L M Wood Products                                                       |  |
| 6 Dawson Creek 7 Island Forests 8 Turtleford 9 Prince Albert 10 Kelvington 11 Island Forests 12 Northern Reconnaisance 13 Turnor East 14 Turnor West 15 Mistik 16 Mee-Toos 17 Kitsaki Zelensky 18 Nemeiben 19 Meadow Lake Fringe 20 Suggi Lowlands 21 Pasquia-Porcupine 22 Meadow Lake OSB 23 L M Wood Products                                                                       |  |
| 7 Island Forests 8 Turtleford 9 Prince Albert 10 Kelvington 11 Island Forests 12 Northern Reconnaisance 13 Turnor East 14 Turnor West 15 Mistik 16 Mee-Toos 17 Kitsaki Zelensky 18 Nemeiben 19 Meadow Lake Fringe 20 Suggi Lowlands 21 Pasquia-Porcupine 22 Meadow Lake OSB 23 L M Wood Products                                                                                      |  |
| 8 Turtleford 9 Prince Albert 10 Kelvington 11 Island Forests 12 Northern Reconnaisance 13 Turnor East 14 Turnor West 15 Mistik 16 Mee-Toos 17 Kitsaki Zelensky 18 Nemeiben 19 Meadow Lake Fringe 20 Suggi Lowlands 21 Pasquia-Porcupine 22 Meadow Lake OSB 23 L M Wood Products                                                                                                       |  |
| 9 Prince Albert 10 Kelvington 11 Island Forests 12 Northern Reconnaisance 13 Turnor East 14 Turnor West 15 Mistik 16 Mee-Toos 17 Kitsaki Zelensky 18 Nemeiben 19 Meadow Lake Fringe 20 Suggi Lowlands 21 Pasquia-Porcupine 22 Meadow Lake OSB 23 L M Wood Products                                                                                                                    |  |
| 10 Kelvington  11 Island Forests 12 Northern Reconnaisance 13 Turnor East 14 Turnor West 15 Mistik 16 Mee-Toos 17 Kitsaki Zelensky 18 Nemeiben 19 Meadow Lake Fringe 20 Suggi Lowlands 21 Pasquia-Porcupine 22 Meadow Lake OSB 23 L M Wood Products                                                                                                                                   |  |
| 11 Island Forests 12 Northern Reconnaisance 13 Turnor East 14 Turnor West 15 Mistik 16 Mee-Toos 17 Kitsaki Zelensky 18 Nemeiben 19 Meadow Lake Fringe 20 Suggi Lowlands 21 Pasquia-Porcupine 22 Meadow Lake OSB 23 L M Wood Products                                                                                                                                                  |  |
| 12 Northern Reconnaisance 13 Turnor East 14 Turnor West 15 Mistik 16 Mee-Toos 17 Kitsaki Zelensky 18 Nemeiben 19 Meadow Lake Fringe 20 Suggi Lowlands 21 Pasquia-Porcupine 22 Meadow Lake OSB 23 L M Wood Products                                                                                                                                                                    |  |
| 13 Turnor East 14 Turnor West 15 Mistik 16 Mee-Toos 17 Kitsaki Zelensky 18 Nemeiben 19 Meadow Lake Fringe 20 Suggi Lowlands 21 Pasquia-Porcupine 22 Meadow Lake OSB 23 L M Wood Products                                                                                                                                                                                              |  |
| 14 Turnor West 15 Mistik 16 Mee-Toos 17 Kitsaki Zelensky 18 Nemeiben 19 Meadow Lake Fringe 20 Suggi Lowlands 21 Pasquia-Porcupine 22 Meadow Lake OSB 23 L M Wood Products                                                                                                                                                                                                             |  |
| 15 Mistik  16 Mee-Toos  17 Kitsaki Zelensky  18 Nemeiben  19 Meadow Lake Fringe  20 Suggi Lowlands  21 Pasquia-Porcupine  22 Meadow Lake OSB  23 L M Wood Products                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |  |
| 16 Mee-Toos 17 Kitsaki Zelensky 18 Nemeiben 19 Meadow Lake Fringe 20 Suggi Lowlands 21 Pasquia-Porcupine 22 Meadow Lake OSB 23 L M Wood Products                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |
| 17 Kitsaki Zelensky 18 Nemeiben 19 Meadow Lake Fringe 20 Suggi Lowlands 21 Pasquia-Porcupine 22 Meadow Lake OSB 23 L M Wood Products                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |  |
| <ul> <li>Nemeiben</li> <li>Meadow Lake Fringe</li> <li>Suggi Lowlands</li> <li>Pasquia-Porcupine</li> <li>Meadow Lake OSB</li> <li>L M Wood Products</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |  |
| <ul> <li>19 Meadow Lake Fringe</li> <li>20 Suggi Lowlands</li> <li>21 Pasquia-Porcupine</li> <li>22 Meadow Lake OSB</li> <li>23 L M Wood Products</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |  |
| 20 Suggi Lowlands 21 Pasquia-Porcupine 22 Meadow Lake OSB 23 L M Wood Products                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |  |
| 21 Pasquia-Porcupine 22 Meadow Lake OSB 23 L M Wood Products                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |  |
| <ul><li>Meadow Lake OSB</li><li>L M Wood Products</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |  |
| 23 L M Wood Products                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |  |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |  |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |  |
| 24 North West                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |  |
| 25 Prince Albert FMA                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |  |
| 26 Island Forests                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |  |
| 27 Island Forests                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |  |
| 28 Island Forests                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |  |
| 29 Island Forests                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |  |
| 30 Spiritwood                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |  |
| 31 INTERLAKE                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |  |
| 32 Mountain                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |  |
| 33 SASKATCHEWAN RIVER                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |  |

**TABLE 2.1:** FMA polygon IDs (from Figure 1) and their corresponding FMA names. (continued)

| ID | Name                                                                                              |
|----|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 34 | Cranbrook                                                                                         |
| 35 | Cranbrook                                                                                         |
| 36 | Cranbrook                                                                                         |
| 37 | Cranbrook                                                                                         |
| 38 | ALPAC Forest Products Incorporated                                                                |
| 39 | ANC Timber Ltd.                                                                                   |
| 40 | Blue Ridge Lumber Inc.                                                                            |
| 41 | Canadian Forest Products Ltd.                                                                     |
| 42 | Daishowa-Marubeni International Ltd. (East)                                                       |
| 43 | Daishowa-Marubeni International Ltd. (West)                                                       |
| 44 | West Fraser Mills Ltd. and Tolko Industries Ltd.                                                  |
| 45 | Manning Diversified Forest Products Ltd.                                                          |
| 46 | Millar Western Forest Products Ltd.                                                               |
| 47 | Spray Lake Sawmills (1980) Ltd.                                                                   |
| 48 | Sundre Forest Products Inc.                                                                       |
| 49 | Tolko Industries Ltd. (High Prairie)                                                              |
| 50 | Tolko Industries Ltd., Footner Forest Products Ltd. and La Crete Sawmills Ltd.                    |
| 51 | Tolko Industries Ltd., Vanderwell Contractors (1971) Ltd. and West Fraser Mills Ltd. (Slave Lake) |
| 52 | Vanderwell Contractors (1971) Ltd.                                                                |
| 53 | West Fraser Mills Ltd. (Edson)                                                                    |
| 54 | West Fraser Mills Ltd. (Hinton)                                                                   |
| 55 | West Fraser Mills Ltd. (Slave Lake)                                                               |
| 56 | Weyerhaeuser Company Limited (Grande Prairie)                                                     |
| 57 | Weyerhaeuser Company Limited (Pembina Timberland)                                                 |
| 58 | Fort Providence                                                                                   |
| 59 | Fort Resolution                                                                                   |

## 2.1.1.2 Choosing a study area

The model can be run on any of several pre-defined study areas summarized in the table below. To select one of these predefined study areas, set .studyAreaName to use one of the following, corresponding to the polygon IDs in the map above.

**TABLE 2.2:** Model study areas with corresponding FMA polygon IDs (from Figure 1).

| studyAreaName | ID         | Description                                   |
|---------------|------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| ANC 39        |            | ANC Timber Ltd.                               |
| Blueridge     | 40         | Blueridge Lumber Inc.                         |
| DMI           | 42, 43     | Mercer Peace River Pulp Ltd. (formerly DMI)   |
| Edson         | 53         | West Fraser Mills Ltd. (Edson)                |
| FMANWT        | 59         | Fort Resolution                               |
| FMANWT2       | 58         | Fort Providence                               |
| LP_BC         | 5,6        | Lousiana Pacific (British Columbia)           |
| LP_MB         | 32         | Lousiana Pacific (Manitoba)                   |
| Manning       | 45         | Manning Diversified Forest Products Ltd.      |
| MillarWestern | 46         | Millar Western Forest Products Ltd.           |
| Mistik        | 15         | Mistik                                        |
| MPR           | 42,43      | Mercer Peace River Pulp Ltd. (formerly DMI)   |
| Sundre        | 48         | Sundre Forest Products Inc.                   |
| Tolko_AB_N    | 50         | Tolko Industries Ltd. (Alberta North)         |
| Tolko_AB_S    | 44, 49, 51 | Tolko Industries Ltd. (Alberta South)         |
| Tolko_SK      | 22         | Tolko (Saskatchewan)                          |
| Vanderwell    | 51, 52     | Vanderwell Contractors (1971) Ltd.            |
| WestFraser_N  | 44, 51, 55 | West Fraser Mills Ltd. (Slave Lake)           |
| WestFraser_S  | 53, 54     | West Fraser Mills Ltd. (Edson + Hinton)       |
| WeyCo_GP      | 56         | Weyerhauser Company Ltd. (Grand Prairie)      |
| WeyCo_PT      | 57         | Weyerhauser Company Ltd. (Pembina Timberland) |
| WeyCo_SK      | 21         | Weyerhauser Company Ltd. (Pasquia-Porcupine)  |

To run an entire province use one of "provAB", "provMB", "provNWT", or "provSK".

To run the entire LandWeb study area, use "LandWeb\_full".

To run on a small test area use "random".

### 2.1.2 Select a scenario

In version 2.0.0 of the LandWeb model, seed dispersal distances needed to be adjusted to ensure sufficient regeneration following fire. These adjustments cause the model to behave more like a state-transition model, rather than a process-based one.

Version 3.0.0 relaxes these parameter forcings to behave like the standard LANDIS-II model.

The dispersal scenario is principally set via .version but can be overridden is set via .dispersalType:

| Dispersal    |                                                           |
|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| Scenario     | Description                                               |
| default (v3) | default LANDIS-II dispersal                               |
| aspen        | limit seed dispersal to deciduous only                    |
| high(v2)     | high seed dispersal of all species (used for v2.0.0 runs) |
| none         | no seed dispersal (all species)                           |

Additionally, v2.0.0 of the model uses adjusted fire return intervals (FRI) and log-adjusted rates of spread (ROS). Version 3.0.0 uses the LandMine defaults.

The fire scenario is principally set via .version but can be overridden by specifying .ROStype:

| Fire         |                                                                 |
|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Scenario     | Description                                                     |
| default (v3) | default rate of spread values                                   |
| burny        | Increases the flammability of non-forest types to facilitate    |
|              | fire spread in landscapes with discontinuous fuels.             |
| equal        | Set all rates of fire spread equal to each other (no vegetation |
|              | differences)                                                    |
| log (v2)     | Reduce the rates of spread but keep the magnitude of            |
|              | vegetation differences                                          |

To define a scenario to run, select one dispersal scenario and one fire scenario from the tables above. All LandWeb v2.0.0 runs from 2019 were run using .dispersalType = "high" and .ROStype = "log". Using v3.0.0 of the model, .dispersalType = "default" and .ROStype = "default".

## 2.1.3 Replication

To run multiple replicates of a given run, set .rep to an integer corresponding to the replicate id. All replicate runs use a different random seed, and this seed is saved as on output for reuse in the event that a replicate needs to be rerun. To rerun a replicate using a different seed, be sure to delete that run's seed.rds file. The seed used is also saved in human-readable seed.txt file.

# 2.2 Running the model

**NOTE:** The first time the model is run, it will automatically download additional data and install additional R packages, which can take some time to complete.

#### 2.2.1 Interactive R session

When working in an R session, be sure to set the working directory to the LandWeb project directory. The first time running the model, open the file 00-global.R, and step through each line to ensure any prompts etc. are answered correctly.

```
.mode <- "development"
.studyAreaName <- "random"
.rep <- 1L
.version <- 2
source("00-global.R")</pre>
```

When authenticating with Google Drive, be sure to check the box to allow access to files.

### 2.2.2 Commandline interface

In addition to running the model in an interactive R session, we provide a command line interface to run replicates of the model for the study areas defined above (i.e., batch mode).

For example, to run replicate number 7 of the model at 250m resolution using FRI multiple of 1 for Alberta FMU L11, use:

```
cd ~/GitHub/LandWeb
## ./run_fmu.sh <FMU> <FRI> <RES> <REP>
./run_fmu.sh L11 1 250 7
```

FMU command line runs do not use modified dispersal nor fire scenarios, and thus only require the study area, replicate, and FRI multiple to be defined.

To run replicate number 7 of the model for the entire province of Alberta, use:

```
cd ~/GitHub/LandWeb

## ./run_fma.sh <FMU> <REP>
./run_fma.sh provAB 7
# ./run_fma_win.sh provAB 7 ## if on Windows!
```

FMA command line runs use highDispersal\_logROS scenarios at 250m resolution, and thus only require the study area and replicate to be defined.

To run the entire LandWeb study area, only a replicate number needs to be passed. For example:

```
## ./run_landweb.sh <REP>
./run_landweb.sh 7
```

LandWeb command line run set the dispersal and fire scenarios as above, and the pixel resolution (.pixelSize) at 250m, and thus only require the study area and replicate to be defined.

# 2.3 Post-processing analyses

After having run several reps of the model on a given study area, results are combined in subsequent post-processing analyses to generate the following outputs for each set of reporting polygons within the study area:

- boxplots of leading vegetation cover;
- histograms of leading vegetation cover;
- histograms of large patches.

To run processing, use .mode = "postprocess" and be sure to set the number of replicates run in the config.

# 2.4 Advanced setup

## 2.4.1 Customizing model run configuration

See box/landweb.R file, and 02a-user-config.R. (TODO)

### 2.4.2 Cache backend

Simulation caching is provided by the reproducible and SpaDES.core packages, and is enabled by default.

The default cache uses a SQLite database backend and stores cache files in cache/. However, other database backends can also be used, and advanced users running multiple parallel simulations may wish to set up and use a PostgreSQL database for this cache.

See https://github.com/PredictiveEcology/SpaDES/wiki/Using-alternate-database-backends-for-Cache and ensure the following options are added to your user-specific config in 02a-user-config.R:

```
reproducible.cacheSaveFormat = "qs",
reproducible.conn = SpaDES.config::dbConnCache("postgresql"),
```

# 2.4.3 Speeding up disk-based operations

Caching and other disk-based file operations benefit from using an solid state drive (SSD) instead of a conventional spinning hard drive. Advanced users can move their cache/ directory to an SSD mountpoint and create a symlink to this location in the project directory. Likewise, users can configure a scratch path for temporary raster file operations to point to an SSD location.

### 2.5 Additional Resources

Resources for (re)learning R and spatial data:

https://rspatial.org

# Study areas

Lorem ipsum ... (TODO)

# LandWeb\_preamble *Module*

(ref:LandWeb\_preamble) LandWeb\_preamble

### 3.0.0.1 Authors:

Eliot J B McIntire eliot.mcintire@nrcan-rncan.gc.ca<sup>1</sup> [aut, cre], Alex M. Chubaty achubaty@for-cast.ca<sup>2</sup> [aut], Ceres Barros cbarros@mail.ubc.ca<sup>3</sup> [aut]

## 3.1 Module Overview

## 3.1.1 Module summary

Set up study areas and parameters for LandWeb simulations.

### 3.2 Parameters

Provide a summary of user-visible parameters.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>mailto:eliot.mcintire@nrcan-rncan.gc.ca

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup>mailto:achubaty@for-cast.ca

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup>mailto:cbarros@mail.ubc.ca

| paramName            | paramClass | default    |     |     | paramDesc                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |  |  |
|----------------------|------------|------------|-----|-----|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|
| bufferDist           | numeric    | 25000      |     |     | Rudy area buffer distance (m) used to make 'studyArea'.                                                                                                                                                                                                   |  |  |
| bufferDistLarge      | numeric    | 50000      |     |     | Study area buffer distance (m) used to make 'studyAreaLarge'.                                                                                                                                                                                             |  |  |
| forceResprout        | logical    | FALSE      | NA  | NA  | TRUE forces all species to resprout, setting 'tesproutage_min' to zero, 'resproutage_max' to 400, and 'resproutProb' to 1.0.                                                                                                                              |  |  |
| friMultiple          | numeric    | 1          | 0.5 | 2   | Multiplication factor for adjusting fire return intervals.                                                                                                                                                                                                |  |  |
| dispersalType        | character  | default    | NA  |     | One of 'aspen', 'high', 'none', or 'default'.                                                                                                                                                                                                             |  |  |
| mergeSlivers         | logical    | FALSE      | NA  | NA  | Should sliver polygons in LTHPC map be merged into nearest non-zero polygon?                                                                                                                                                                              |  |  |
| minFRI               | numeric    | 40         | 0   | 200 | The value of fire return interval below which, pixels will be changed to 'NA', i.e., ignored                                                                                                                                                              |  |  |
| pixelSize            | numeric    | 250        | NA  | NA  | Pixel size in metres. Should be one of 250, 125, 50, 25.                                                                                                                                                                                                  |  |  |
|                      | character  | default    | NA  | NA  | tte of spread preset to use. One of 'burny', 'equal', 'log', or 'default'.                                                                                                                                                                                |  |  |
| treeClassesLCC       | integer    | 1, 2, 3,   | 0   | 39  | A forested LCCClasses'. The classes in the LCC2005' layer that are considered 'trees' from the perspective of LandR-Biomass.                                                                                                                              |  |  |
| treeClassesToReplace | numeric    | 34, 35, 36 | 0   | 39  | The transient classes in the 'LOC2005' layer that will become 'trees' from the perspective of LandR-Biomass (e.g., burned)                                                                                                                                |  |  |
| .plotInitialTime     | numeric    | 0          | NA  | NA  | This describes the simulation time at which the first plot event should occur                                                                                                                                                                             |  |  |
| .plotInterval        | numeric    | 1          | NA  | NA  | This describes the simulation time interval between plot events                                                                                                                                                                                           |  |  |
| .plots               | character  | object     | NA  | NA  | Passed to 'types' in 'Plots' (see 'Plots'). There are a few plots that are made within this module, if set. Note that plots (or their data) saving will ONLY occur at 'end(sim)'. If 'NA', plotting is turned off completely (this includes plot saving). |  |  |
| .savelnitialTime     | numeric    | NA         | NA  | NA  | This describes the simulation time at which the first save event should occur                                                                                                                                                                             |  |  |
| .saveInterval        | numeric    | NA         | NA  | NA  | This describes the simulation time interval between save events                                                                                                                                                                                           |  |  |
| .sslVerify           | integer    | 64         | NA  | NA  | Passed to fittr:config[ssl_verifypeer = P(sim)@sslVerifyf when downloading KNN (NFI) datasets. Set to OL if necessary to bypass checking the SSL certificate (this may be necessary when NFI's website SSL certificate is not correctly configured).      |  |  |
| .studyAreaName       | character  | NA         | NA  |     | Human-readable name for the study area used. If NA, a hash of 'studyAreaLarge' will be used.                                                                                                                                                              |  |  |
| .useCache            | logical    | FALSE      | NA  | NA  | Should this entire module be run with caching activated? This is generally intended for data-type modules, where stochasticity and time are not relevant                                                                                                  |  |  |

| objectName | objectClass              | desc                                     | sourceURL |
|------------|--------------------------|------------------------------------------|-----------|
| canProvs   | SpatialPolygonsDataFrame | Canadian provincial boundaries shapefile | NA        |

# 3.3 Data dependencies

# 3.3.1 Input data

Description of the module inputs.

# 3.3.2 Output data

Description of the module outputs.

# 3.4 Links to other modules

Originally developed for use with the LandR Biomass suite of modules, with LandMine fire model. ## References



# Vegetation submodel

The LandR ecosystem of SpaDES modules has a variety of data and/or calibration modules that are used to obtain and pre-process input data, as well as estimate input parameters required by the core forest landscape simulation module *Biomass\_core*. These modules are presented in the subsequent chapters.

# LandR Biomass\_speciesData Module

This documentation is work in progress. Please report any discrepancies or omissions at https://github.com/PredictiveEcology/Biomass\_speciesData/issues.

#### 4.0.0.1 Authors:

Eliot J B McIntire eliot.mcintire@nrcan-rncan.gc.ca<sup>1</sup> [aut, cre], Alex M. Chubaty achubaty@for-cast.ca<sup>2</sup> [aut], Ceres Barros cbarros@mail.ubc.ca<sup>3</sup> [aut]

### 4.1 Module Overview

### 4.1.1 Module summary

This module downloads and pre-process species % cover data layers to be passed to other LandR data modules (e.g., *Biomass\_borealDataPrep*) or to the LandR forest simulation module *Biomass\_core*.

## 4.1.2 Module inputs and parameters at a glance

Below are the full list of input objects (Table 4.1) and parameters (Table 4.2) that *Biomass\_speciesData* expects. Of these, the only input that **must** be provided (i.e., *Biomass\_speciesData* does not have a default for) is studyAreaLarge.

Raw data layers downloaded by the module are saved in dataPath(sim),

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>mailto:eliot.mcintire@nrcan-rncan.gc.ca

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup>mailto:achubaty@for-cast.ca

<sup>3</sup>mailto:cbarros@mail.ubc.ca

**TABLE 4.1:** List of *Biomass\_speciesData* input objects and their description.

| objectName         | desc                                                                                                 |  |  |
|--------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|
| rasterToMatchLarge | a raster of 'studyAreaLarge' in the same resolution and projection the simulation's. Defaults to the |  |  |
|                    | using the Canadian Forestry Service, National Forest Inventory, kNN-derived stand biomass map.       |  |  |
| rawBiomassMap      | total biomass raster layer in study area. Only used to create 'rasterToMatchLarge' if necessary.     |  |  |
|                    | Defaults to the Canadian Forestry Service, National Forest Inventory, kNN-derived total              |  |  |
|                    | aboveground biomass map from 2001 (in tonnes/ha), unless 'dataYear' != 2001. See                     |  |  |
|                    | https://open.canada.ca/data/en/dataset/ec9e2659-1c29-4ddb-87a2-6aced147a990 for metadata.            |  |  |
| sppColorVect       | A named vector of colors to use for plotting. The names must be in                                   |  |  |
|                    | sim\$sppEquiv[[sim\$sppEquivCol]], and should also contain a color for 'Mixed'                       |  |  |
| sppEquiv           | table of species equivalencies. See 'LandR::sppEquivalencies_CA'.                                    |  |  |
| sppNameVector      | an optional vector of species names to be pulled from 'sppEquiv'. Species names must match           |  |  |
|                    | 'P(sim)\$sppEquivCol' column in 'sppEquiv'. If not provided, then species will be taken from the     |  |  |
|                    | entire 'P(sim)\$sppEquivCol' column in 'sppEquiv'. See 'LandR::sppEquivalencies_CA'.                 |  |  |
| studyAreaLarge     | Polygon to use as the parametrisation study area. Must be provided by the user. Note that            |  |  |
|                    | 'studyAreaLarge' is only used for parameter estimation, and can be larger than the actual study      |  |  |
|                    | area used for LandR simulations (e.g, larger than 'studyArea' in LandR Biomass_core).                |  |  |
| studyAreaReporting | multipolygon (typically smaller/unbuffered than 'studyAreaLarge' and 'studyArea' in LandR            |  |  |
|                    | Biomass_core) to use for plotting/reporting. If not provided, will default to 'studyAreaLarge'.      |  |  |

which can be controlled via options(reproducible.destinationPath = ...).

**TABLE 4.2:** List of *Biomass\_speciesData* parameters and their description.

| paramName            | paramDesc                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |  |  |  |
|----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|
| coverThresh          | The minimum % cover a species needs to have (per pixel) in the study area to be considered present                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |  |  |  |
| dataYear             | Passed to 'pasteO('prepSpeciesLayers_', types)' function to fetch data from that year (if applicable). Defaults to 2001 as the default kNN year.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |  |  |  |
| sppEquivCol          | The column in 'sim\$sppEquiv' data.table to group species by and use as a naming convention. If different species in, e.g., the kNN data have the same name in the chosen column, their data are merged into one species by summing their % cover in each raster cell.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |  |  |  |
| types                | The possible data sources. These must correspond to a function named pasteO('prepSpeciesLayers_', types). Defaults to 'KNN' to get the Canadian Forestry Service, National Forest Inventory, kNN-derived species cover maps from year 'dataYear', using the 'LandR::prepSpeciesLayers_KNN' function (see https://open.canada.ca/ data/en/dataset/ec9e2659-1c29-4ddb-87a2-6aced147a990 for details on these data). Other currently available options are 'ONFRI', 'CASFRI', 'Pickell' and 'ForestInventory', which attempt to get proprietary data - the user must be granted access first. A custom function can be used to retrieve any data, just as long as it is accessible by the module (e.g., in the global environment) and is named as pasteO('prepSpeciesLayers_', types). |  |  |  |
| vegLeadingProportion | a number that defines whether a species is leading for a given pixel. Only used for plotting.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |  |  |  |
| .plotInitialTime     | This describes the simulation time at which the first plot event should occur                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |  |  |  |
| .plotInterval        | This describes the simulation time interval between plot events                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |  |  |
| .plots               | Passed to 'types' in 'Plots' (see 'Plots'). There are a few plots that are made within this module, if set. Note that plots (or their data) saving will ONLY occur at 'end(sim)'. If 'NA', plotting is turned o completely (this includes plot saving).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |  |  |  |
| .saveInitialTime     | This describes the simulation time at which the first save event should occur                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |  |  |  |
| .saveInterval        | This describes the simulation time interval between save events                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |  |  |
| .sslVerify           | Passed to 'httr::config(ssl_verifypeer = P(sim)\$sslVerify)' when downloading KNN (NFI) datasets.  Set to OL if necessary to bypass checking the SSL certificate (this may be necessary when NFI's website SSL certificate is not correctly configured).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |  |  |  |
| .studyAreaName       | Human-readable name for the study area used. If NA, a hash of 'studyAreaLarge' will be used.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |  |  |  |
| .useCache            | Controls cache; caches the init event by default                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |  |  |  |
| .useParallel         | Used in reading csv file with fread. Will be passed to data.table::setDTthreads.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |  |  |  |

4.2 Module Overview 61

**TABLE 4.3:** List of *Biomass\_speciesData* output objects and their description.

| objectName    | desc                                                                                         |  |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|
| speciesLayers | biomass percentage raster layers by species in Canada species map                            |  |
| treed         | Table with one logical column for each species, indicating whether there were non-zero cover |  |
|               | values in each pixel.                                                                        |  |
| numTreed      | a named vector with number of pixels with non-zero cover values for each species             |  |
| nonZeroCover  | A single value indicating how many pixels have non-zero cover                                |  |

#### **4.1.3** Events

Biomass\_speciesData only runs two events:

- Module "initiation" (init event), during which all species % cover layers are downloaded and processed.
- Plotting of the processed species cover layers (initPlot event).

### 4.1.4 Module outputs

The module produces the following outputs (Table 4.3):

and automatically saves the processed species cover layers in the output path defined in getPaths(sim)\$outputPath.

### 4.1.5 Links to other modules

Intended to be used with other LandR data modules (e.g., *Biomass\_borealDataPrep*) that require species cover data and the LandR forest simulation *Biomass\_core* module. You can see all *potential* module linkages within the LandR ecosystem here<sup>4</sup>. Select *Biomass\_speciesData* from the drop-down menu to see linkages.

### 4.1.6 Getting help

https://github.com/PredictiveEcology/Biomass\_speciesData/issues

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>4</sup>https://rpubs.com/PredictiveEcology/LandR\_Module\_Ecosystem

### 4.2 Module manual

### 4.2.1 Detailed description

This module accesses and processes species percent cover (% cover) data for the parametrisation and initialization of LandR *Biomass\_core*. This module ensures 1) all data use the same geospatial geometries and 2) that these are correctly re-projected to studyAreaLarge, and 3) attempts to sequentially fillin and replace the lowest quality data with higher quality data when several data sources are used. It's primary output is a RasterStack of species % cover, with each layer corresponding to a species.

Currently, the module can access the Canadian Forest Inventory forest attributes kNN dataset [the default; Beaudoin et al. [5]], the Common Attribute Schema for Forest Resource Inventories [CASFRI; Cosco [9]] dataset, the Ontario Forest Resource Inventory (ONFRI), a dataset specific to Alberta compiled by Paul Pickell, and other Alberta forest inventory datasets. However, only the NFI kNN data are freely available – access to the other datasets must be granted by module developers and data owners, and a Google account is required. Nevertheless, the module is flexible enough that any user can use it to process additional datasets, provided that an adequate R function is passed to the module (see types parameter details in Parameters)

When multiple data sources are used, the module will use replace lower quality data with higher quality data following the order specified by the parameter types (see Parameters).

When multiple species of a given data source are to be grouped, % cover is summed across species of the same group within each pixel. Please see the sppEquiv input in Input objects for information on how species groups are defined.

The module can also exclude species % cover layers if they don't have a minimum % cover value in at least one pixel. This means that the user should still inspect in how many pixels the species is deemed present, as it is possible that some data have only a few pixels with high % cover for a given species. In this case, the user may choose to exclude these species *a posteriori*. The summary plot automatically shown by *Biomass\_speciesData* can help diagnose whether certain species are present in very few pixels (see Fig. 4.1).

4.2 Module manual 63

### 4.2.2 Initialization, inputs and parameters

Biomass\_speciesData initializes itself and prepares all inputs provided that it has internet access to download the raw data layers (or that these layers have been previously downloaded and stored in the folder specified by options("reproducible.destinationPath")).

The module defaults to processing cover data fo all species listed in the Boreal column of the default sppEquiv input data.table object, for which there are available % cover layers in the kNN dataset (Table 4.4; see ?LandR::sppEquivalencies\_CA for more information):

### 4.2.2.1 Input objects

Biomass\_speciesData requires the following input data layers

Of the inputs in Table 4.5, the following are particularly important and deserve special attention:

- studyAreaLarge the polygon defining the area for which species cover data area desired. It can be larger (but never smaller) that the study area used in the simulation of forest dynamics (i.e., studyArea object in *Biomass core*).
- sppEquiv a table of correspondences between different species naming conventions. This table is used across several LandR modules, including <code>Biomass\_core</code>. It is particularly important here because it will determine whether and how species (and their cover layers) are merged, if this is desired by the user. For instance, if the user wishes to simulate a generic <code>Picea spp</code>. that includes, <code>Picea glauca</code>, <code>Picea mariana</code> and <code>Picea engelmannii</code>, they will need to provide these three species names in the data column (e.g., KNN if obtaining forest attribute kNN data layers from the Canadian Forest Inventory), but the same name (e.g., "Pice\_Spp") in the coumn chosen for the naming convention used throughout the simulation (the <code>sppEquivCol parameter</code>); see Table 4.6 for an example).

#### 4.2.2.2 Parameters

Table 4.7 lists all parameters used in *Biomass\_speciesData* and their detailed information.

**TABLE 4.4:** List of species cover data downloaded by default by *Biomass\_speciesData*.

| Species                              | Generic name       |  |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------|--|
| *Abies balsamea*                     | Balsam Fir         |  |
| *Abies lasiocarpa*                   | Fir                |  |
| *Acer negundo*                       | Boxelder maple     |  |
| *Acer pensylvanicum*                 | Striped maple      |  |
| *Acer saccharinum*                   | Silver maple       |  |
| *Acer saccharum*                     | Sugar maple        |  |
| *Acer spicatum*                      | Mountain maple     |  |
| *Acer spp.*                          | Maple              |  |
| *Alnus spp*                          | Alder              |  |
| *Betula alleghaniensis*              | Swamp birch        |  |
| *Betula papyrifera*                  | Paper birch        |  |
| *Betula populifolia*                 | Gray birch         |  |
| *Betula spp.*                        | Birch              |  |
| *Fagus grandifolia*                  | American beech     |  |
| *Fraxinus americana*                 | American ash       |  |
| *Fraxinus nigra*                     | Black ash          |  |
| *Fraxinus spp.*                      | Ash                |  |
| *Larix laricina*                     | Tamarack           |  |
| *Larix lyallii*                      | Alpine larch       |  |
| *Larix occidentalis*                 | Western larch      |  |
| *Larix spp.*                         | Larch              |  |
| *Picea engelmannii x glauca*         | Engelmann's spruce |  |
| *Picea engelmannii x glauca*         | Engelmann's spruce |  |
| *Picea engelmannii*                  | Engelmann's spruce |  |
| *Picea glauca*                       | White.Spruce       |  |
| *Picea mariana*                      | Black.Spruce       |  |
| *Picea spp.*                         | Spruce             |  |
| *Pinus albicaulis*                   | Whitebark pine     |  |
| *Pinus banksiana*                    | Jack pine          |  |
| *Pinus contorta*                     | Lodgepole pine     |  |
| *Pinus monticola*                    | Western white pine |  |
| *Pinus resinosa*                     | Red pine           |  |
| *Pinus spp.*                         | Pine               |  |
| *Populus balsamifera*                | Balsam poplar      |  |
| *Populus balsamifera v. balsamifera* | Balsam poplar      |  |
| JL 1 • 1 JL                          | _1 1 1             |  |

4.2 Module manual 65

**TABLE 4.5:** List of *Biomass\_speciesData* input objects and their description.

| objectName                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | objecticlass               | desa                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | sawort \$1. |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| same for the same of the same | RasonDayer                 | a reason of vand-phone langer in the same resolution and projection the circulations. Defaults to the using the Canadian forecasty Service, National Reset Investory, ENN-derived exact Monasus map.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |             |
| rantionacotap                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | RaineLayer                 | 2002 bloom as name layer in study awa. Only used to create 'autor Tablisth Longe if necessary, Defaults to the Canadian Favority Service, National Favority  | -           |
| appColoriect                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | dagater                    | A named worse of colors to use for plorting. The names must be in simpspiliquis/ploinspipsliquis/Gell, and should also contain a color for 'Mined'                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | NA.         |
| appliquis                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | dan mbir                   | Table of species equivalencies. See "Landit-uppliquiralencies, CK.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |             |
| sppNameVector                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | danter                     | an optional vector of species names to be palled from 'appliquir'. Species names must match Principappliquir'. Cir column in 'appliquir'. See 'Land B. oppliquir'. See 'Lan | NA.         |
| eticopheralarge                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | SpatialOggenications       | Holgon to one at the parametrication enally area. Must be provided by the same. Note that windpressal larger is only used the parameter estimation, and can be larger than the actual enally assumed the Landil domain. one parameter in Landil domain.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | NA          |
| midplevakeporting                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Spatial Polygon distaliana | multipolygon (typically smalles) inhistfissed than traditioned stan traditional inhances, cost to see a plotting/reporting. If not provided, will default to 'enabyteralizege'.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | NA          |

**TABLE 4.6:** Example of species merging for simulation. Here the user wants to model *Abies balsamea*, *A. lasiocarpa* and *Pinus contorta* as separate species, but all *Picea spp.* as a genus-level group. For this, all six species are identified in the KNNcolumn, so that their % cover layers can be obtained, but in the Borealcolumn (which defines the naming convention used in the simulation in this example) all *Picea spp.* have the same name. *Biomass\_speciesData* will merge their % cover data into a single layer by summing their cover per pixel.

| Species                      | KNN          | Boreal   | Modelled as        |
|------------------------------|--------------|----------|--------------------|
| *Abies balsamea*             | Abie_Bal     | Abie_Bal | *Abies balsamea*   |
| *Abies lasiocarpa*           | Abie_Las     | Abie_Las | *Abies lasiocarpa* |
| *Picea engelmannii x glauca* | Pice_Eng_Gla | Pice_Spp | *Picea spp.*       |
| *Picea engelmannii x glauca* | Pice_Eng_Gla | Pice_Spp | *Picea spp.*       |
| *Picea engelmannii*          | Pice_Eng     | Pice_Spp | *Picea spp.*       |
| *Picea glauca*               | Pice_Gla     | Pice_Spp | *Picea spp.*       |
| *Picea mariana*              | Pice_Mar     | Pice_Spp | *Picea spp.*       |
| *Pinus contorta*             | Pinu_Con     | Pinu_Con | *Pinus contorta*   |

Of the parameters listed in Table 4.7, the following are particularly important:

- coverThresh integer. Defines a minimum % cover value (from 0-100) that the species must have in at least one pixel to be considered present in the study area, otherwise it is excluded from the final stack of species layers. Note that this will affect what species have data for an eventual simulation and the user will need to adjust simulation parameters (e.g., species in trait tables will need to match the species in the cover layers) accordingly.
- types character. Which % cover data sources are to be used (see Detailed description). Several data sources can be passed, in which case the module will overlay the lower quality layers with higher quality ones following

**TABLE 4.7:** List of *Biomass\_speciesData* parameters and their description.

the order of data sources specified by types – i.e., if types == c("KNN", "CASFRI", "ForestInventory"), KNN is assumed to be the lowest quality data set and ForestInventory the highest: values in KNN layers are replaced with overlapping values from CASFRI layers and values from KNN and CASFRI layers are replaced with overlapping values of ForestInventory layers.

#### 4.2.3 Simulation flow

The general flow of Biomass\_speciesData processes is:

- Download (if necessary) of and spatial processing of species cover layers from the first data source listed in the types parameter. Spatial processing consists in sub-setting the data to the area defined by studyAreaLarge and ensuring that the spatial projection and resolution match those of rasterToMatchLarge. After spatial processing, species layers that have no pixels with values >= to the coverThresh parameter are excluded.
- 2. If more than one data source is listed in types, the second set of species cover layers is downloaded and processed as above.
- 3. The second set of layers is assumed to be the highest quality dataset and used to replaced overlapping pixel values on the first (including for species whose layers may have been initially excluded after applying the coverThresh filter).
- 4. Steps 2 and 3 are repeated for remaining data sources listed in types.
- Final layers are saved to disk and plotted. A summary of number of pixels with forest cover are calculated (treedand numTreed output objects; see Module outputs).

4.3 Usage example

67

# 4.3 Usage example

4.3.1 Load SpadES and other packages.

```
if (!require(Require)) {
    install.packages("Require")
    library(Require)
}

Require(c("PredictiveEcology/SpaDES.install", "SpaDES",
"PredictiveEcology/SpaDES.core@development",
    "PredictiveEcology/LandR"), install_githubArgs =
    list(dependencies = TRUE))
```

### 4.3.2 Get module, necessary packages and set up folder directories

### 4.3.3 Setup simulation

For this demonstration we are using all default parameter values, except coverThresh, which is lowered to 5%. The species layers (the major output of interest) are saved automatically, so there is no need to tell spades what to save using the outputs argument (see ?SpaDES.core::outputs).

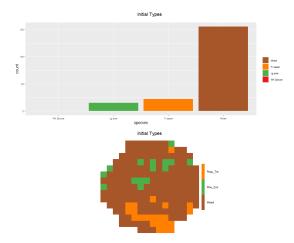
We pass the global parameter .plotInitialTime = 1 in the simInitAndSpades function to activate plotting.

```
# User may want to set some options -- see
# ?reproducibleOptions -- e.g., often the path to the
# 'inputs' folder will be set outside of project by user:
# options(reproducible.inputPaths =
# 'E:/Data/LandR_related/') # to re-use datasets across
# projects
studyAreaLarge <- Cache(randomStudyArea, size = 1e+07, cacheRepo</pre>
= paths$cachePath) # cache this so it creates a random one only
once on a machine
# Pick the species you want to work with -- here we use the
# naming convention in 'Boreal' column of
# LandR::sppEquivalencies_CA (default)
speciesNameConvention <- "Boreal"</pre>
speciesToUse <- c("Pice_Gla", "Popu_Tre", "Pinu_Con")</pre>
sppEquiv <-
LandR::sppEquivalencies_CA[get(speciesNameConvention) %in%
    speciesToUse]
# Assign a colour convention for graphics for each species
sppColorVect <- LandR::sppColors(sppEquiv,</pre>
speciesNameConvention,
    newVals = "Mixed", palette = "Set1")
## Usage example
modules <- list("Biomass_speciesData")</pre>
objects <- list(studyAreaLarge = studyAreaLarge, sppEquiv =</pre>
sppEquiv,
    sppColorVect = sppColorVect)
params <- list(Biomass_speciesData = list(coverThresh = 5L))</pre>
```

#### 4.3.4 Run module

Note that because this is a data module (i.e., only attempts to prepare data for the simulation) we are not iterating it and so both the start and end times are set to 1 here.

Here are some of outputs of *Biomass\_speciesData* (dominant species) in a randomly generated study area within Canada.



**FIGURE 4.1:** *Biomass\_speciesData* automatically generates a plot of species dominance and number of presences in the study area when '.plotInitial-Time=1' is passed as an argument.

## 4.4 References

- [5] A Beaudoin et al. Species composition, forest properties and land cover types across Canada's forests at 250m resolution for 2001 and 2011. 2017. DOI: 10. 23687 / EC9E2659 1C29 4DDB 87A2 6ACED147A990<sup>5</sup>. URL: http://open.canada.ca/data/en/dataset/ec9e2659 1c29 4ddb 87a2 6aced147a990.
- [9] John Cosco. COMMON ATTRIBUTE SCHEMA (CAS) FOR FOREST IN-VENTORIES ACROSS CANADA. Feb. 2011, p. 117.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>5</sup>https://doi.org/10.23687/EC9E2659-1C29-4DDB-87A2-6ACED147A990

# LandR Biomass\_borealDataPrep Module

This documentation is work in progress. Please report any discrepancies or omissions at https://github.com/PredictiveEcology/Biomass\_borealDataPrep/issues.

### 5.0.0.1 Authors:

Yong Luo Yong.Luo@gov.bc.ca<sup>1</sup> [aut], Eliot J B McIntire eliot.mcintire@nrcan-rncan.gc.ca<sup>2</sup> [aut, cre], Ceres Barros ceres.barros@ubc.ca<sup>3</sup> [aut], Alex M. Chubaty achubaty@for-cast.ca<sup>4</sup> [aut]

## 5.1 Module Overview

## 5.1.1 Quick links

- General functioning
- List of input objects
- List of parameters
- List of outputs
- Simulation flow and module events

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>mailto:Yong.Luo@gov.bc.ca

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup>mailto:eliot.mcintire@nrcan-rncan.gc.ca

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup>mailto:ceres.barros@ubc.ca

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>4</sup>mailto:achubaty@for-cast.ca

### 5.1.2 Summary

LandR *Biomass\_borealDataPrep* (hereafter *Biomass\_borealDataPrep*), prepares all necessary inputs for *Biomass\_core* based on data available for forests across Canada forests, but focused on Western Canada boreal forest systems. Nevertheless, it provides a good foundation to develop other modules aimed at different geographical contexts. By keeping data preparation and parameter estimation outside of *Biomass\_core*, we promote the modularity of the LandR-based model systems and facilitate interoperability with other parameter estimation procedures.

Specifically, it prepares and adjusts invariant and spatially-varying species trait values, as well as ecolocation-specific parameters, probabilities of germination and initial conditions necessary to run *Biomass\_core*. For this, *Biomass\_borealDataPrep* requires internet access to retrieve default data<sup>5</sup>.

We advise future users to run *Biomass\_borealDataPrep* with defaults and inspect the resulting input objects are like before supplying alternative data (or data URLs).

### 5.1.3 Links to other modules

Biomass\_borealDataPrep is intended to be used with Biomass\_core<sup>6</sup>, but can be linked with other data modules that prepare inputs. See here<sup>7</sup> for all available modules in the LandR ecosystem and select Biomass\_borealDataPrep from the drop-down menu to see potential linkages.

- Biomass\_core<sup>8</sup>: core forest dynamics simulation module. Used downstream from Biomass\_borealDataPrep;
- Biomass\_speciesData<sup>9</sup>: grabs and merges several sources of species cover data, making species percent cover (% cover) layers used by other LandR Biomass modules. Default source data spans the entire Canadian territory. Used upstream from Biomass\_borealDataPrep;

 $<sup>^5</sup>$ Raw data layers downloaded by the module are saved in 'dataPath(sim)', which can be controlled via 'options(reproducible.destinationPath = ...)'.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>6</sup>https://github.com/PredictiveEcology/Biomass\_core

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>7</sup>https://rpubs.com/PredictiveEcology/LandR\_Module\_Ecosystem

<sup>8</sup>https://github.com/PredictiveEcology/Biomass\_core

<sup>9</sup>https://github.com/PredictiveEcology/Biomass\_speciesData

• Biomass\_speciesParameters<sup>10</sup>: calibrates four-species level traits using permanent sample plot data (i.e., repeated tree biomass measurements) across Western Canada. Used downstream from Biomass\_borealDataPrep.

## 5.2 Module manual

## 5.2.1 General functioning

Biomass\_borealDataPrep prepares all inputs necessary to run a realistic simulation of forest dynamics in Western Canadian boreal forests using Biomass\_core. Part of this process involves cleaning up the input data and imputing missing data in some cases, which are discussed in detail in Data acquisition and treatment.

After cleaning and formatting the raw input data, the module:

- calculates species biomass per pixel by multiplying the observed species % cover by the observed stand biomass and an adjustment factor, which can be statistically calibrated for the study area. Given that this adjusts the species biomass, this calibration step contributes to the calibration of maxB and maxANPP trait values, whose estimation is also based on species biomass (see Initial species age and biomass per pixel and Adjustment of species biomass);
- prepares invariant species traits these are spatio-temporally constant species traits that influence population dynamics (e.g., growth, mortality, dispersal) and responses to fire (see Invariant species traits);
- 3. defines **ecolocations** groupings of pixels with similar biophysical conditions. By default, ecolocations are defined as the spatial combination of ecodistricts of the National Ecological Framework for Canada, and the Land Cover of Canada 2010 map (see Defining simulation pixels and ecolocations). **Note that ecolocation is termed ecoregionGroup across LandR modules**.
- 4. prepares ecolocation-specific parameters and probabilities of

<sup>10</sup> https://github.com/PredictiveEcology/Biomass\_speciesParameters

- **germination** only one ecolocation-specific parameter is used, the minimum relative biomass thresholds, which defines the level of shade in a pixel. Together the level of shade and the probabilities of germination influence germination success in any given pixel;
- 5. estimates spatio-temporally varying species traits species traits that can vary by ecolocation and in time. These are maximum biomass (maxB), maximum above-ground net primary productivity (maxANPP; see Maximum biomass and maximum aboveground net primary productivity) and species establishment probability (SEP, called establishprob in the module traits table; see Species establishment probability). By default, Biomass\_borealDataPrep estimates temporally constant values of maxB, maxANPP and SEP;
- 6. creates **initial landscape conditions** Biomass\_borealDataPrep performs data-based landscape initialisation, by creating the species cohort table (cohortData) and corresponding map (pixelGroupMap; both used to initialise and track cohorts across the landscape) based on observed stand age and species biomass.

As *Biomass\_core* only simulates tree species dynamics, *Biomass\_borealDataPrep* prepares all inputs and estimates parameters in pixels within forested land-cover classes (see Defining simulation pixels and ecolocations).

If a studyAreaLarge is supplied, the module uses it for parameter estimation to account for larger spatial variability.

In the next sections, we describe in greater detail the various data processing and parameter estimation steps carried out by *Biomass\_borealDataPrep*.

## 5.2.2 Data acquisition and treatment

The only two objects that the user must supply are shapefiles that define the study area used to derive parameters (studyAreaLarge) and the study area where the simulation will happen (studyArea). The two objects can be identical if the user chooses to parametrise and run the simulations in the same area. If not identical, studyArea must be fully within studyAreaLarge. If studyAreaLarge and studyArea are in Canada, the module can automatically estimate and prepare all input parameters and objects for *Biomass\_core*, as the default raw data are FAIR data [sensu 25] at the national-scale.

If no other inputs are supplied, Biomass\_borealDataPrep will create raster

layer versions studyAreaLarge and studyArea (rasterToMatchLarge and rasterToMatch, respectively), using the stand biomass map layer (rawBiomassMap) as a template (i.e., the source of information for spatial resolution).

## 5.2.2.1 Defining simulation pixels and ecolocations

Biomass\_borealDataPrep uses land-cover data to define and assign parameter values to the pixels where forest dynamics will be simulated (forested pixels). By default it uses land-cover classes from the Land Cover of Canada 2010 vI map<sup>11</sup>, a raster-based database that distinguishes several forest and nonforest land-cover types. Pixels with classes I to 6 are included as forested pixels (see parameter forestedLCCClasses).

When the land-cover raster (rstLCC) includes transient cover types (e.g., recent burns) the user may pass a vector of transient class IDs (via the parameter LCCClassesToReplaceNN) that will be reclassified into a "stable" forested class (defined via the parameter forestedLCCClasses). The reclassification is done by searching the focal neighbourhood for a replacement forested cover class (up to a radius of 1250m from the focal cell). If no forested class is found within this perimeter, the pixel is not used to simulate forest dynamics. Reclassified pixels are omitted from the fitting of statistical models used for parameter estimation, but are assigned predicted values from these models.

Sub-regional spatial variation in maxBiomass, maxANPP, and SEP species traits is accounted for by ecolocation. Ecolocations are used as proxies for biophysical variation across the landscape when estimating model parameters that vary spatially. By default, they are defined as the combination of "ecodistricts" from the National Ecological Framework for Canada<sup>12</sup> (a broad-scale polygon layer that captures sub-regional variation) (ecoregionLayer) and the above land cover (rstLCC), but the user can change this by supplying different ecozonation or land-cover layers.

 $<sup>^{11}</sup> http://www.cec.org/north-american-environmental-atlas/land-cover-2010-modis-250 m/$ 

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>12</sup>https://open.canada.ca/data/en/dataset/3ef8e8a9-8d05-4fea-a8bf-7f5023d2b6e1

#### 5.2.2.2 Species cover

Species cover (% cover) raster layers (speciesLayers) can be automatically obtained and pre-processed by *Biomass\_borealDataPrep*. The module ensures that:

- 1. all data have the same geospatial properties (extent, resolution);
- all layers these are correctly re-projected to studyAreaLarge and rasterToMatchLarge;
- 3. species with no cover values above 10% are excluded.

By default it uses species % cover rasters derived from the MODIS satellite imagery from 2001, obtained from the Canadian National Forest Inventory [5] – hereafter 'kNN species data'.

## 5.2.2.3 Initial species age and biomass per pixel

Stand age and aboveground stand biomass (hereafter 'stand biomass') are used to derive parameters and define initial species age and biomass across the landscape. These are also derived from MODIS satellite imagery from 2001 prepared by the NFI [5] by default.

Biomass\_borealDataPrep downloads these data and performs a number of data harmonization operations to deal with data inconsistencies. It first searches for mismatches between stand age (standAge), stand biomass (standB) and total stand cover (standCover), assuming that cover is the most accurate of the three, and biomass the least, and in the following order:

- 1. Pixels with standCover < 5% are removed:
- 2. Pixels with standAge == 0, are assigned standB == 0;
- 3. Pixels with standB == 0, are assigned standAge == 0.

Then, species is assigned one cohort per pixel according to the corrected stand age, stand biomass and % cover values. Cohort age is assumed to be the same as stand age and biomass is the product of stand biomass and species % cover. Before doing so, stand cover is rescaled to vary between 0 and 100%.

A next set of data inconsistencies in cohort age (age), biomass (B) and cover (cover) is looked for and solved in the following order:

 if cover > 0 and age == 0, B is set to 0 (and stand biomass recalculated);

5. if cover == 0 and age > 0, or if age == NA, age is empirically estimated using the remainder of the data to fit the model supplied by P(sim)\$imputeBadAgeModel, which defaults to:

```
## [[1]]
## lme4::lmer(age ~ log(totalBiomass) * cover * speciesCode + (log(totalBiomass) |
## initialEcoregionCode))
```

Cohort biomass is then adjusted to reflect the different cover to biomass relationship of conifer and broadleaf species (see Adjustment of initial species biomass).

#### 5.2.2.4 Replacing initial biomass and age within known fire perimeters

Biomass\_borealDataPrep can use fire perimeters to correct stand ages. To do so, it downloads the latest fire perimeter data from the Canadian Wildfire Data Base<sup>13</sup> and changes pixel age inside fire perimeters to match the time since last fire, using fire years up to the first year of the simulation.

Taking two independent datasets for stand age (fire perimeters) and stand biomass (derived from MODIS satellite imagery) can cause discrepancies (e.g. stand age = 5 and aboveground biomass = 10000 m2/ha). This may be due to errors coming from a) a stand replacing disturbance that reset age to zero a few years before, but the biomass layer was no zeroed, or b) the disturbance was not stand-replacing (leaving biomass), but age was still zeroed. This means that either, aboveground biomass is wrong or age is.

Options to address this include 1) get better data for these two variables that do not contradict one another (not currently available to us) or 2) estimate one or the other. There is no obvious way to decide which one is incorrect, unless there is an independent data source.

In the current *Biomass\_borealDataPrep* module version, we chose to correct both. If P(sim)\$fireURL is provided and P(sim)\$overrideBiomassInFires is TRUE, fire perimeters are used as the source of information for age, and *Biomass\_core* is used to generate corresponding biomassvalues based on the

<sup>13</sup>https://cwfis.cfs.nrcan.gc.ca/datamart

estimated growth parameters and known species presence/absence (from the species cover layers).

This assumes that 1) recorded fires were stand-replacing, and so time since fire is the new stand age and 2) that the first year of the simulation is later than the first fire year in the fire perimeter data. The biomass spin-up with  $Biomass\_core$  is only run in pixels were stand ages were corrected, for as long as the new stand age (i.e., the time since last fire). All specie start with age = 0 and biomass = 0, and grow until time since last fire is achieved. The resulting species biomass is used as the initial biomass values for each species cohort in the actual simulation.

If the user does not want to perform this imputation, this step can be by-passed by setting the parameter P(sim)\$overrideBiomassInFires to FALSE or P(sim)\$fireURL to NULL or NA.

Also pixels that suffered *any kind* of data imputation (e.g., the age corrections detailed in the previous section) can be excluded from the simulation by setting P(sim)\$rmImputedPix == TRUE.

#### 5.2.2.5 Invariant species traits

Most invariant species traits are obtained from available species trait tables used in LANDIS-II applications in Canada's boreal forests (available in Dominic Cyr's GitHub repository<sup>14</sup>). Some are then adapted with minor adjustments to match Western Canadian boreal forests using published literature. Others (key growth and mortality traits) can be calibrated by *Biomass\_speciesParameters* (see Calibrating species growth/mortality traits using *Biomass\_speciesParameters*).

The LANDIS-II species trait table contains species trait values for each Canadian Ecozone [13], which are by default filtered to the Boreal Shield West (BSW), Boreal Plains (BP) and Montane Cordillera Canadian Ecozones (via P(sim)\$speciesTableAreas). Most trait values do not vary across these ecozones for a given species, but when they do the minimum value is used.

The function LandR::speciesTableUpdate is used by default to do further adjustments to trait values in this table (if this is not intended, a custom function call or NULL can be passed to P(sim)\$speciesUpdateFunction):

· Longevity values are adjusted to match the values from Burton and Cum-

<sup>14</sup> https://github.com/dcyr/LANDIS-II\_IA\_generalUseFiles

ming [6], which match BSP, BP and MC ecozones. These adjustments result in higher longevity for most species;

• Shade tolerance values are lowered for Abies balsamifera, Abies lasiocarpa, Picea engelmanii, Picea glauca, Picea mariana, Tsuga heterophylla and Tsuga mertensiana to better **relative** shade tolerance levels in Western Canada. Because these are relative shade tolerances, the user should **always** check these values with respect to their own study areas and species pool.

The user can also pass more than one function call to P(sim)\$speciesUpdateFunction if they want to make other adjustments in addition to those listed above (see ?LandR::updateSpeciesTable).

## 5.2.2.6 Probabilities of germination

By default, *Biomass\_borealDataPrep* uses the same probabilities of germination (called sufficientLight in the module) as *Biomass\_core*. These are obtained from publicly available LANDIS-II table<sup>15</sup>.

## 5.2.3 Parameter estimation/calibration

## 5.2.3.1 Adjustment of initial species biomass

Biomass\_borealDataPrep estimates initial values of species aboveground biomass (B) based on stand biomass (standB) and individual species % cover. Initial B is estimated for each species in each pixel by multiplying standB by species % cover. Because the default cover layers are satellite-derived, the relationship between relative cover and relative biomass of broadleaf and conifer species needs to be adjusted to reflect their different canopy architectures (using P(sim)\$deciduousCoverDiscount).

By default, *Biomass\_borealDataPrep* uses a previously estimated P(sim)\$deciduousCoverDiscount based on Northwest Territories data. However, the user can chose to re-estimate it by setting P(sim)\$fitDeciduousCoverDiscount == TRUE. In this case, by default *Biomass\_borealDataPrep* will fit the the following model:

## [[1]]

 $<sup>^{15}</sup>https://raw.githubusercontent.com/LANDIS-II-Foundation/Extensions-Succession/master/biomass-succession-archive/trunk/tests/v6.0-2.0/biomass-succession_test.txt$ 

```
## glm(I(log(B/100)) ~ logAge * I(log(totalBiomass/100)) * speciesCode *
## lcc)
```

which relates the estimated biomass (B) with an interaction term between log-age (logAge), standB ('totalBiomass'), speciesCode (i.e. species ID) and land cover ('lcc'). The model is fitted to the standB and species cover on studyAreaLarge, using an optimization routine that searches for the best conversion factor between broadleaf species cover and B by minimizing AIC.

## 5.2.3.2 Maximum biomass and maximum aboveground net primary productivity

Biomass\_borealDataPrep statistically estimates maximum biomass (maxB) and maximum aboveground net primary productivity (maxANPP) using the processed species ages and biomass.

maxB is estimated by modelling the response of species biomass (B) to species age and cover, while accounting for variation between ecolocations (ecoregionGroup below):

```
## [[1]]
## lme4::lmer(B ~ logAge * speciesCode + cover * speciesCode + (logAge +
## cover | ecoregionGroup))
```

The coefficients are estimated by maximum likelihood and model fit is calculated as the proportion of explained variance explained by fixed effects only (marginal r2) and by the entire model (conditional r2) – both of which are printed as messages.

Because the model can take a while to fit, by default we sample pixels within each species and ecolocation combination (sample size defined by the P(sim)\$subsetDataBiomassModel parameter).

If convergence issues occur and P(sim)\$fixModelBiomass == TRUE, the module attempts to refit the model by re-sampling the data, re-fitting lmer with the bobyqa optimizer, and re-scaling the continuous predictors (by default, cover and logAge). These steps are tried additively until the convergence issue is resolved. If the module is still unable to solve the convergence issue a message is printed and the module uses the last fitted model.

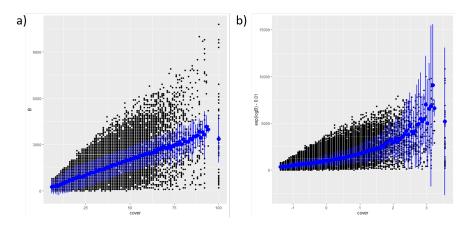
Note that convergence issues are not usually problematic for the estimation of coefficient values, only for estimation of their standard errors. However,

the user should always inspect the final model (especially if not converged) and make sure that the problems are not significant and that the fitted model meets residual assumptions. For this, the user should make sure model objects are exported to the simlist using the exportModels parameter.

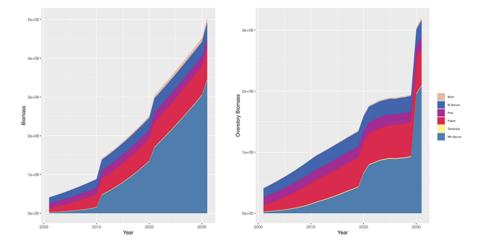
Alternative model calls/formulas can be supplied via the P(sim)\$biomassModel parameter. Note that if supplying a model call that does not use lme4::lmer the refitting process is likely to fail and may have to be disabled (via the P(sim)\$fixModelBiomass parameter).

Another consideration to add with respect to the estimation of maxB, is that we are choosing a linear model to relate B ~ log(age) + cover. This is not ideal from an ecological point of view, as biomass is unlikely to vary linearly with age or cover, and more likely to saturate beyond a certain high value of cover and follow a hump-shaped curve with age (i.e., reaching maximum values for a given age, and then starting to decrease as trees approach longevity). Also, fitting a linear model can lead to negative B values at young ages and low cover. However, our tests revealed that a linear mixed effects model was not producing abnormal estimates of B at maximum values of age and cover (hence, maxB estimates), while allowing to leverage on the powerful statistical machinery of lme4.

Finally, we highlight that modelling log(B) is NOT an appropriate solution, because it will wrongly assume an *exponential* relationship between B ~ log(age) + cover, leading to a serious overestimation of log(B) steep increases in species biomasses during the first years of the simulation (Fig. 5.2).



**FIGURE 5.1:** Modelling biomass as a linear vs. exponential relationship. a) 'modelBiomass' as 'B logAge \* speciesCode + cover \* speciesCode + (logAge + cover | ecoregionGroup)'. b) 'modelBiomass' as 'logB logAge \* speciesCode + cover \* speciesCode + (logAge + cover | ecoregionGroup)'. Blue dots are marginal mean B values (back-transformed in b) cross ages with confidence intervals as the bars.



**FIGURE 5.2:** Thirty years of simulation with 'maxB' values estimated from a 'logB ...' 'biomassModel' (see Fig. reffig:fig-biomassModelLogBtest). The steep increase in such little time is abnormal.

After the biomass model is fit, maxB is predicted by species and ecoloca-

tion combination, for maximum species cover values (100%) and maximum log-age (the log of species longevity). When using *Biomass\_speciesParameters*, maxB is calibrated so that species can achieve the maximum observed biomass during the simulation (see Calibrating species growth/mortality traits using *Biomass\_speciesParameters*).

maxANPP is the calculated as maxB \* manner m

### 5.2.3.3 Species establishment probability

Species establishment probability (SEP, establishprob in the module) is estimated by modelling the probability of observing a given species in each ecolocation. For this,  $Biomass\_borealDataPrep$  models the relationship between probability of occurrence of a species  $(\pi)$  using the following model by default:

```
## [[1]]
## glm(cbind(coverPres, coverNum - coverPres) ~ speciesCode * ecoregionGroup,
## family = binomial)
```

whereby the probability of occurrence of a species  $(\pi)$  – calculated as the proportion of pixels with % cover > 0 – is modelled per species and ecolocation following a binomial distribution with a logit link function. There is no data sub-sampling done before fitting the SEP statistical model, as the model fits quickly even for very large sample sizes (e.g., > 20 million points).

SEP is then predicted by species and ecolocation combination and the resulting values are integrated over the length of the succession time step (successionTimestep parameter) as:

$$integratedSEP = 1 - (1 - estimatedSEP)^{e^{successionTimestep}}$$
 (5.1)

This is important, since seed establishment only occurs once at every

P(sim)\$successionTimestep, and thus the probabilities of seed establishment need to be temporally integrated to reflect the probability of a seed establishing in this period of time.

Finally, since the *observed* species cover used to fit coverModel is a result of both seed establishment and resprouting/clonal growth, the final species establishment probabilities are calculated as a function of the temporally integrated presence probabilities and species' probabilities of resprouting (resproutprob, in the species table) (bounded between 0 and 1):

$$SEP = integratedSEP * (1 - resproutprob)$$
 (5.2)

if SEP > 1, then:

$$SEP = 1 (5.3)$$

if SEP < 0, then:

$$SEP = 0 (5.4)$$

#### 5.2.3.4 Ecolocation-specific parameter – minimum relative biomass

Minimum relative biomass (minRelativeB) is a spatially-varying parameter used to determine the shade level in each pixel. Each shade class (XO-X5) is defined by a minimum relative biomass threshold compared to the pixel's current relative biomass, which is calculated as the sum of pixel's total biomass divided by the total potential maximum biomass in that pixel (the sum of all maxB for the pixel's ecolocation).

Since we found no data to base the parametrisation of the shade class thresholds, default values are based on publicly available values used in LANDIS-II applications in Canada's boreal forests (available in Dominic Cyr's GitHub repository<sup>16</sup>), and all ecolocations share the same values.

Initial runs revealed excessive recruitment of moderately shade-intolerant species even as stand biomass increased, so values for shade levels X4 and X5 are adjusted downwards (X4: 0.8 to 0.75; X5: 0.90 to 0.85) to reflect higher

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>16</sup>https://github.com/dcyr/LANDIS-II\_IA\_generalUseFiles

competition for resources (e.g. higher water limitation) in Western Canadian forests with regards to Eastern Canadian forests [12], which are likely driven by higher moisture limitation in the west [10, 14].

This adjustment can be bypassed by either supplying a minRelativeB table, or an alternative function call to P(sim)\$minRelativeBFunction (which by default is LandR::makeMinRelativeB.

The minimum biomass threshold of a shade level of X0 is 0 standB.

# 5.2.3.5 Calibrating species growth/mortality traits using Biomass\_speciesParameters

If using *Biomass\_borealDataPrep* and *Biomass\_speciesParameters*, the later module calibrates several species traits that are first prepared by *Biomass\_borealDataPrep*:

- growthcurve, mortalityshape which initially come from publicly available LANDIS-II tables;
- maxBiomass, maxANPP which are estimated statistically by Biomass\_borealDataPrep (see Maximum biomass and maximum aboveground net primary productivity).

Briefly, Biomass\_speciesParameters:

- Uses ~41,000,000 hypothetical species' growth curves (generated with *Biomass\_core*), that cover a fully factorial combination of longevity, ratio of maxANPP to maxBiomass, growthcurve, mortalityshape;
- 2. Takes permanent and temporary sample plot (PSP) data in or near the study area for the target species, and finds which hypothetical species' growth curve most closely matches the growth curve observed in the PSP data on a species-by-species base. This gives us each species' growthcurve, mortalityshape, and a new species trait, manpproportion, a ratio of maximum aboveground net primary productivity (maxanpp) to maximum biomass (maxbiomass, not to be confounded with maxb) in the study area.
- 3. Introduces a second new species trait, inflationFactor, and recalibrates maxB. We recognize that maxB, as obtained empirically

by Biomass\_borealDataPrep, cannot be easily reached in simulations because all reasonable values of growthcurve, mortalityshape and longevity prevent the equation from reaching maxB (it acts as an asymptote that is never approached). The inflationFactor is calculated as the ratio of maxBiomass (the parameter used to generate theoretical growth curves in step 1) to the maximum biomass actually achieved by the theoretical growth curves (step 1). maxB is then recalibrated by multiplying it by inflationFactor. By doing this, resulting non-linear growth curves generated doing Biomass\_core simulation will be able to achieve the the empirically estimated maxB.

4. Estimates species-specific maxANPP by multiplying the final maxB above by mANPPproportion (estimated in step 2).

In cases where there is insufficient PSP data to perform the above steps, maxB and maxANPP are left as estimated by *Biomass\_borealDataPrep* (see Maximum biomass and maximum aboveground net primary productivity) and inflationFactor and manpproportion take default values of 1 and 3.33.

## 5.2.4 Aggregating species

Biomass\_borealDataPrep will use the input table sppEquiv and the parameter P(sim)\$sppEquivCol to select the naming convention to use for the simulation (see full list of input objects and parameters for details). The user can use this table and parameter to define groupings that "merge" similar species that have their own invariant trait values (see Invariant species traits) (e.g. genus-level group or a functional group). To do so, the name of the species group in sppEquivCol column of the sppEquiv table must be identical for each grouped species.

**TABLE 5.1:** Example of species merging for simulation. Here the user wants to model *Abies balsamea*, *A. lasiocarpa* and *Pinus contorta* as separate species, but all *Picea spp.* as a genus-level group. For this, all six species are identified in the 'KNN' column, so that their % cover layers can be obtained, but in the 'Boreal' column (which defines the naming convention used in the simulation in this example) all *Picea spp.* have the same name. *Biomass\_borealDataPrep* will merge their % cover data into a single layer by summing their cover per pixel. (continued below)

| Species                      | KNN          | Boreal   |
|------------------------------|--------------|----------|
| Abies balsamea               | Abie_Bal     | Abie_Bal |
| Abies lasiocarpa             | Abie_Las     | Abie_Las |
| Picea engelmannii x glauca   | Pice_Eng_Gla | Pice_Spp |
| Picea engelmannii x glauca   | Pice_Eng_Gla | Pice_Spp |
| Picea engelmannii            | Pice_Eng     | Pice_Spp |
| Picea glauca                 | Pice_Gla     | Pice_Spp |
| Picea mariana                | Pice_Mar     | Pice_Spp |
| Pinus contorta var. contorta |              | Pinu_Con |
| Pinus contorta               | Pinu_Con     | Pinu_Con |

| Modelled as                  |
|------------------------------|
| Abies balsamea               |
| Abies lasiocarpa             |
| Picea spp.                   |
| Pinus contorta var. contorta |
| Pinus contorta               |

When groups contain species with different (invariant) trait values, the minimum value across all species is used. As for the default species % cover layers, *Biomass\_borealDataPrep* proceeds in the same way as *Biomass\_speciesData* and sums cover across species of the same group per pixel.

## 5.2.5 List of input objects

Below are is the full lists of input objects (Table 5.3) that Biomass\_borealDataPrep expects.

The only inputs that **must** be provided (i.e., *Biomass\_borealDataPrep* does not have a default for) are studyArea (the study area used to simulate forest dynamics *Biomass\_core*) and studyAreaLarge (a potentially larger study area used to derive parameter values – e.g., species traits).

All other input objects and parameters have internal defaults.

Of these inputs, the following are particularly important and deserve special attention:

## Spatial layers

- ecoregionLayer or ecoregionRst a shapefile or map containing ecological zones.
- rawBiomassMap a map of observed stand biomass (in  $g/m^2$ ).
- rstLCC a land-cover raster.
- speciesLayers layers of species % cover data. The species must match
  those available in default (or provided) species traits tables (the species
  and speciesEcoregion tables).
- standAgeMap a map of observed stand ages (in years).
- studyArea shapefile. A SpatialPolygonsDataFrame with a single polygon determining where the simulation will take place. This input object must be supplied by the user.
- studyAreaLarge shapefile. A SpatialPolygonsDataFrame with a single
  polygon determining the where the statistical models for parameter estimation will be fitted. It must contain studyArea fully, if they are not identical. This object must be supplied by the user.

#### **Tables**

 speciesTable – a table of invariant species traits that must have the following columns (even if not all are necessary to the simulation):

"species", "Area", "longevity", "sexualmature", "shadetolerance", "firetolerance", "seeddistance\_eff", "seeddistance\_max", "resproutprob", "resproutage\_min", "resproutage\_max", "postfireregen", "leaflongevity", "wooddecayrate", "mortalityshape", "growthcurve", "leaf Lignin", "hardsoft". The order can vary but the column names must be identical. See Scheller and Miranda [21] and *Biomass\_core* manual for further detail about these columns.

**TABLE 5.3:** List of *Biomass\_borealDataPrep* input objects and their description.

| objectName                 | objectClass                   | desc                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | sourceURL                                                                                        |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cloudFolde rID             | character                     | The google drive location where cloudCac he will store large statistical objects                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | NA                                                                                               |
| columnsFor<br>PixelGroup s | character                     | The names of the columns in cohortData that define unique pixelGroups. Default is c('ecoregionGroup', 'speciesCode', 'age', 'B')                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | NA                                                                                               |
| ecoregionL ayer            | SpatialPol<br>ygonsDataF rame | A SpatialPolygonsDataFrame that charac terizes the unique ecological regions (ecoregionGroup) used to parameterize the biomass, cover, and species establishm ent probability models. It will be overlaid with landcover to generate classes for every ecoregion/LCC combination. It must have same extent and crs as studyAr ealarge. It is superseded by sim\$ecore gionRst if that object is supplied by the user | https://si<br>s.agr.gc.c<br>a/cansis/n<br>sdb/ecostr<br>at/distric<br>t/ecodistr<br>ict_shp.zi p |

| objectName      | objectClass  | desc                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | sourceURL                                                                                                         |
|-----------------|--------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ecoregionR st   | RasterLaye r | A raster that characterizes the unique e cological regions used to parameterize the biomass, cover, and species establish ment probability models. If this object is provided, it will supercede sim\$ecor egionLayer. It will be overlaid with la ndcover to generate classes for every ec oregion/LCC combination. It must have sa me extent and crs as rasterToMatchLarge if supplied by user - use reproducibl e::postProcess. If it uses an attribute table, it must contain the field 'ecore gion' to represent raster values         | NA                                                                                                                |
| firePerime ters | RasterLaye r | Fire perimeters raster, with fire year i nformation used to 'update' stand age us ing time since last fire as the imputed value. Only used if P(sim)\$overrideAgeI nFires = TRUE. Biomass will also be upd ated in these pixels if P(sim)\$override BiomassInFires = TRUE and the last fire was later than 1985. Defaults to using fire perimeters in the Canadian National Fire Database, downloaded as a zipped s hapefile with fire polygons, an attribut e (i.e., a column) named 'YEAR', which is used to rasterize to the study area. | https://cw<br>fis.cfs.nr<br>can.gc.ca/<br>downloads/<br>nfdb/fire_<br>poly/curre<br>nt_version<br>/NFDB_poly .zip |

| 7          |
|------------|
| LandR E    |
| ≀R Biomass |
| borealDat  |
| ataPrep    |
| Module     |

| objectName             | objectClass  | desc                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | sourceURL |
|------------------------|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| rstLCC                 | RasterLaye r | A land classification map in study area. It must be 'corrected', in the sense th at: 1) Every class must not conflict with any other map in this module (e.g., s peciesLayers should not have data in LC C classes that are non-treed); 2) It can have treed and non-treed classes. The n on-treed will be removed within this module if P(sim)\$omitNonTreedPixels is T RUE; 3) It can have transient pixels, s uch as 'young fire'. These will be converted to a the nearest non-transient class, probabilistically if there is more than I nearest neighbour class, based on P(sim)\$LCCClassesToReplaceNN. The default layer used, if not supplied, is Canad a national land classification in 2010. The metadata (res, proj, ext, origin) ne ed to match rasterToMatchLarge. | NA        |
| rasterToMa tch         | RasterLaye r | A raster of the studyArea in the same resolution and projection as rawBiomass Map. This is the scale used for all out puts for use in the simulation. If not s upplied will be forced to match the defa ult rawBiomassMap.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | NA        |
| rasterToMa<br>tchLarge | RasterLaye r | A raster of the studyAreaLarge in the same resolution and projection as rawBi omassMap. This is the scale used for all inputs for use in the simulation. If n ot supplied will be forced to match the default rawBiomassMap.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | NA        |

| objectName     | objectClass  | desc                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | sourceURL                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|----------------|--------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| rawBiomass Map | RasterLaye r | total biomass raster layer in study area . Defaults to the Canadian Forestry Serv ice, National Forest Inventory, kNN-deri ved total aboveground biomass map from 2 001 (in tonnes/ha), unless 'dataYear' != 2001. See https://open.canada.ca/data/e n/dataset/ec9e2659-1c29-4ddb-87a2-6aced1 47a990 for metadata. | http://ftp .maps.cana da.ca/pub/ nrcan_rnca n/Forests_ Foret/cana da-forests -attribute s_attribut s-forests- canada/200 1-attribut es_attribu ts-2001/NF I_MODIS250 m_2001_kNN _Structure Biomass_T otalLiveAb oveGround v1.tif |

| 7                                |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| an                               |  |
| dR Biomass_borealDataPrep Module |  |

| objectName     | objectClass  | desc                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | sourceURL                                                                                                                                       | <del>-</del> 94                     |
|----------------|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| speciesLay ers | RasterStac k | cover percentage raster layers by specie s in Canada species map. Defaults to the Canadian Forestry Service, National For est Inventory, kNN-derived species cover maps from 2001 using a cover threshold of 10 - see https://open.canada.ca/data/en/dataset/ec9e2659-1c29-4ddb-87a2-6aced 147a990 for metadata                                                                                                                                                                  | http://ftp .maps.cana da.ca/pub/ nrcan_rnca n/Forests_ Foret/cana da-forests -attribute s_attribut s-forests- canada/200 1-attribut es_attribut | S Landk                             |
| speciesTab le  | data.table   | a table of invariant species traits with the following trait colums: 'species', 'Area', 'longevity', 'sexualmature', 'sh adetolerance', 'firetolerance', 'seeddis tance_eff', 'seeddistance_max', 'resprou tprob', 'resproutage_min', 'resproutage_ max', 'postfireregen', 'leaflongevity', 'wooddecayrate', 'mortalityshape', 'grow thcurve', 'leaf Lignin', 'hardsoft'. Name s can differ, but not the column order. Default is from Dominic Cyr and Yan Boul anger's project. | ts-2001/ https://ra w.githubus ercontent. com/dcyr/L ANDIS-II_I A_generalU seFiles/ma ster/speci esTraits.c sv                                  | Landk B10mass_borealDataPrep Module |

\_ |

| objectName     | objectClass | desc                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | sourceURL |
|----------------|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| sppColorVe ct  | character   | named character vector of hex colour cod es corresponding to each species                                                                                                                                                                                            | NA        |
| sppEquiv       | data.table  | table of species equivalencies. See ?La ndR::sppEquivalencies_CA.                                                                                                                                                                                                    | NA        |
| sppNameVec tor | character   | an optional vector of species names to be pulled from sppEquiv. Species names must match P(sim)\$sppEquivCol column in sppEquiv. If not provided, then species will be taken from the entire P(sim)\$sppEquivCol column in sppEquiv. See LandR::sppEquivalencies_CA. | NA        |

| 7                           |
|-----------------------------|
| LandR                       |
| Biomass                     |
| LandR Biomass borealDataPre |
| p Module                    |

| objectName   | objectClass                   | desc                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | sourceURL                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|--------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| standAgeMa p | RasterLaye r                  | stand age map in study area. Must have a 'imputedPixID' attribute (a vector of p ixel IDs) indicating which pixels suffer ed age imputation. If no pixel ages were imputed, please set this attribute to integer (0). Defaults to the Canadian Fo restry Service, National Forest Inventor y, kNN-derived biomass map from 2001, un less 'dataYear'!= 2001. See https://ope n.canada.ca/data/en/dataset/ec9e2659-1c2 9-4ddb-87a2-6aced147a990 for metadata | http://ftp .maps.cana da.ca/pub/ nrcan_rnca n/Forests_ Foret/cana da-forests -attribute s_attribut s-forests- canada/200 1-attribut es_attribu ts-2001/NF I_MODIS250 m_2001_kNN _Structure _Stand_Age |
| studyArea    | SpatialPol<br>ygonsDataF rame | Polygon to use as the study area. Must be supplied by the user.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | _v1.tif<br>NA                                                                                                                                                                                         |

| objectName      | objectClass                   | desc                                                                                                                                                                 | sourceURL |
|-----------------|-------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| studyAreaL arge | SpatialPol<br>ygonsDataF rame | multipolygon (potentially larger than s tudyArea) used for parameter estimation , Must be supplied by the user. If large r than studyArea, it must fully contain it. | NA        |

## 5.2.6 List of parameters

Table 5.4 lists all parameters used in *Biomass\_borealDataPrep* and their detailed information. All have default values specified in the module's metadata.

Of these parameters, the following are particularly important:

## Estimation of simulation parameters

- biomassModel the statistical model (as a function call) used to estimate maxB and maxANPP.
- coverModel the statistical model (as a function call) used to estimate SEP.
- fixModelBiomass determines whether biomassModel is re-fit when convergence issues arise.
- imputeBadAgeModel model used to impute ages when they are missing, or do not match the input cover and biomass data. Not to be confounded with correcting ages from fire data
- subsetDataAgeModel and subsetDataBiomassModel control data subsampling for fitting the imputeBadAgeModel and biomassModel, respectively
- exportModels controls whether biomassModel or coverModel (or both)
  are to be exported in the simulation simList, which can be useful to inspect
  the fitted models and report on statistical fit.
- sppEquivCol character. the column name in the speciesEquivalency data.table that defines the naming convention to use throughout the simulation.

## Data processing

- forestedLCCClasses and LCCClassesToReplaceNN define which landcover classes in rstLCC are forested and which should be reclassified to forested classes, respectively.
- deciduousCoverDiscount, coverPctToBiomassPctModel and fitDeciduousCoverDiscount the first is the adjustment factor for broadleaf species cover to biomass relationships; the second and third are the model used to refit deciduousCoverDiscount in the supplied studyAreaLarge and whether refitting should be attempted (respectively).

**TABLE 5.4:** List of *Biomass\_borealDataPrep* parameters and their description.

| paramName     | paramC    | l <b>abs</b> fault | min | max | paramDesc                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|---------------|-----------|--------------------|-----|-----|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| biomassModel  | call      | lme4::lm.          | NA  | NA  | Model and formula for estimating biomass (B) from ecoregionGroup (currently ecoregionLayer LandCoverClass), speciesCode, logAge (gives a downward curving relationship), and cover. Defaults to a LMEM, which can be slow if dealing with very large datasets (e.g. 36 000 points take 20min). For faster fitting try P(sim)\$subsetDataBiomassModel == TRUE, or quote(RcppArmadillo::fastLm(formula = B ~ logAge speciesCode ecoregionGroup + cover speciesCode ecoregionGroup)). A custom model call can also be provided, as long as the 'data' argument is NOT included. |
| coverModel    | call      | glm,<br>cbi        | NA  | NA  | Model and formula used for estimating cover from ecoregionGroup and speciesCode and potentially others. Defaults to a GLMEM if there are > 1 grouping levels. A custom model call can also be provided, as long as the 'data' argument is NOT included                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| fixModelBioma | sslogical | FALSE              | NA  | NA  | should biomassModel be fixed in the case of non-convergence? Only scaling of variables and attempting to fit with a new optimizer (bobyqa, see ?lme4) are implemented at this time.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

| paramName      | paramCl <b>aks</b> fault                  | min  | max | paramDesc                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------|------|-----|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| subsetDataAtte | emiputæger 3                              | 1    | 10  | How many times should biomassModel be attempted to fit with a new data subset in case of non-convergence? Each time, the data is resampled (if subsetDataBiomassModel = TRUE) and the model re-fit with the original data, scaled variables and/or a different optimizer if fixModelBiomass = TRUE. Model refiting with original data, rescaled variables and/or a new optimizer occurs up to three times for each data subset, regardless of this parameter's value.                                                                                                              |
| subsetDataBior | mai <b>ssiMged</b> el 50                  | NA   | NA  | the number of samples to use when subsampling the biomass data model (biomassModel); Can be TRUE/FALSE/NULL or numeric; if TRUE, uses 50, the default. If FALSE/NULL no subsetting is done.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| coverPctToBion | na <b>sal</b> ictMod <b>eli</b> m,<br>I(l | NA   | NA  | Model to estimate the relationship between % cover and % biomass, referred to as P(sim) \$fitDeciduousCoverDiscount It is a number between 0 and 1 that translates % cover, as provided in several databases, to % biomass. It is assumed that all hardwoods are equivalent and all softwoods are equivalent and that % cover of hardwoods will be an overesimate of the % biomass of hardwoods. E.g., 30% cover of hardwoods might translate to 20% biomass of hardwoods. The reason this discount exists is because hardwoods in Canada have a much wider canopy than softwoods. |
| deciduousCove  | r <b>Dismeric</b> 0.841891                | I NA | NA  | This was estimated with data from NWT on March 18, 2020 and may or may not be universal. Will not be used if  P(sim)\$fitDeciduousCoverDiscount == TRUE                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |

| paramName      | paramCl <b>aks</b> fault        | min | max | paramDesc                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|----------------|---------------------------------|-----|-----|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| fitDeciduousCo | ov <b>doQiisa</b> burHALSE      | NA  | NA  | If TRUE, this will re-estimate P(sim)\$fitDeciduousCoverDiscount This may be unstable and is not recommended currently. If FALSE, will use the current default                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| dataYear       | numeric 2001                    | NA  | NA  | Used to override the default 'sourceURL' of KNN datasets (species cover, stand biomass and stand age), which point to 2001 data, to fetch KNN data for another year. Currently, the only other possible year is 2011.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| ecoregionLayer | Fi <b>eht</b> aracter           | NA  | NA  | the name of the field used to distinguish ecoregions, if supplying a polygon. Defaults to NULL and tries to use 'ECODISTRIC' where available (for legacy reasons), or the row numbers of simsecoregionLayer. If this field is not numeric, it will be coerced to numeric.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| exportModels   | charactemone                    | NA  | NA  | Controls whether models used to estimate maximum B/ANPP (biomassModel) and species establishment (coverModel) probabilities are exported for posterior analyses or not. This may be important when models fail to converge or hit singularity (but can still be used to make predictions) and the user wants to investigate them further. Can be set to 'none' (no models are exported), 'all' (both are exported), 'biomassModel' or 'coverModel'. BEWARE: because this is intended for posterior model inspection, the models will be exported with data, which may mean very large simList(s)! |
| forestedLCCCla | as <b>ses</b> meric 1, 2,<br>3, | 0   | NA  | The classes in the rstLCC layer that are 'treed' and will therefore be run in Biomass_core. Defaults to forested classes in LCC2010 map.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

| paramName     | paramCl <b>abs</b> fault | min | max | paramDesc                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|---------------|--------------------------|-----|-----|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| imputeBadAge: | M <b>odl÷</b> l lme4::lm | NA  | NA  | Model and formula used for imputing ages that are either missing or do not match well with biomass or cover. Specifically, if biomass or cover is O, but age is not, or if age is missing (NA), then age will be imputed. Note that this is independent from replacing ages inside fire perimeters (see P(sim)\$overrideAgeInFires)                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| LCCClassesToR | e <b>placeNi</b> ic      | NA  | NA  | This will replace these classes on the landscape with the closest forest class P(sim) forestedLCCClasses. If the user is using the LCC 2005 land-cover data product for rstLCC, then they may wish to include 36 (cities – if running a historic range of variation project), and 34:35 (burns) Since this is about estimating parameters for growth, it doesn't make any sense to have unique estimates for transient classes in most cases. If no classes are to be replaced, pass 'LCCClassesToReplaceNN' = numeric(0) when supplying parameters. |
| minCoverThres | h <b>old</b> meric 5     | 0   | 100 | Pixels with total cover that is equal to or below this number will be omitted from the dataset                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

| paramName                         | paramC             | l <b>abs</b> fault | min      | max      | paramDesc                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|----------|----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| minRelativeBFu                    | n <b>cal</b> bn    | LandR::n           | n.NA     | NA       | A quoted function that makes the table of min. relative B determining a stand shade level for each ecoregionGroup. Using the internal object pixelCohortData is advisable to access/use the list of ecoregionGroups per pixel. The function must output a data. frame with 6 columns, named ecoregionGroup and 'XI' to 'X5', with one line per ecoregionGroup code, and the min. relative biomass for each stand shade level X1-5. The default function uses values from LANDIS-II available at: https://github.com/dcyr/LANDIS-II_IA_generalUseFiles/blob/master/LandisInputs/BSW/biomass- |
| omitNonTreedP                     | i <b>xels</b> ical | TRUE               | FALS     | ETRU     | succession-main-inputs_BSW_Baseline.txt%7E. EShould this module use only treed pixels, as identified by P(sim)\$forestedLCCClasses?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| overrideAgeInFi                   | r <b>es</b> gical  | TRUE               | NA       | NA       | should stand age values inside fire perimeters be replaced with number of years since last fire?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| overrideBiomass<br>pixelGroupAgeC | -                  | TRUE               | NA<br>NA | NA<br>NA | should B values be re-estimated using Biomass_core for pixels within the fire perimeters for which age was replaced with time since last fire? Ignored if P(sim)\$overrideAgeInFires = FALSE. See firePerimeters input object and P(sim)\$overrideAgeInFires for further detail. When assigning pixelGroup membership, this defines the resolution of ages that will be considered 'the same pixelGroup', e.g., if it is 10, then 6 and 14 will be the same                                                                                                                                 |

| paramName        | paramCla <b>ks</b> fault          | min | max | paramDesc                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|------------------|-----------------------------------|-----|-----|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pixelGroupBiom   | asuGlesic 100                     | NA  | NA  | When assigning pixelGroup membership, this defines the resolution of biomass that will be considered 'the same pixelGroup', e.g., if it is 100, then 5160 and 5240 will be the same                                                                                                                                 |
| rmImputedPix     | logical FALSE                     | NA  | NA  | Should sim\$imputedPixID be removed from the simulation?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| speciesUpdateFt  | u <b>list</b> ion LandR::s.       | NA  | NA  | Unnamed list of (one or more) quoted functions that updates species table to customize values. By default, LandR::speciesTableUpdate is used to change longevity and shade tolerance values, using values appropriate to Boreal Shield West (BSW), Boreal Plains (BP) and Montane Cordillera (MC) ecoprovinces (see |
|                  |                                   |     |     | ?LandR::speciesTableUpdate for details). Set to NULL if default trait values from speciesTable are to be kept instead. The user can supply other or additional functions to change trait values (see LandR::updateSpeciesTable)                                                                                     |
| sppEquivCol      | characterBoreal                   | NA  | NA  | The column in sim\$speciesEquivalency data.table to use as a naming convention.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| speciesTableArea | a <b>c</b> haracterBSW,<br>BP, MC | NA  | NA  | One or more of the Ecoprovince short forms that are in the speciesTable file, e.g., BSW, MC etc. Default is good for Alberta and other places in the western Canadian boreal forests.                                                                                                                               |
| subsetDataAgeA   | A <b>nde</b> heric 50             | NA  | NA  | the number of samples to use when subsampling the age data model and when fitting coverPctToBiomassPctModel; Can be TRUE/FALSE/NULL or numeric; if TRUE, uses 50, the default. If FALSE/NULL no subsetting is done.                                                                                                 |
| successionTimes  | stepmeric 10                      | NA  | NA  | defines the simulation time step, default is 10 years                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

| paramName        | paramCl <b>aks</b> fault | min | max | paramDesc                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|------------------|--------------------------|-----|-----|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| useCloudCache    | Fdogicas TRUE            | NA  | NA  | Some of the statistical models take long (at least 30 minutes, likely longer). If this is TRUE, then it will try to get previous cached runs from googledrive.                                                                                         |
| vegLeadingProp   | o <b>ntion</b> eric 0.8  | 0   | 1   | a number that defines whether a species is leading for a given pixel                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| .plotInitialTime | numeric 0                | NA  | NA  | This is here for backwards compatibility. Please use .plots                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| .plots           | characterNA              | NA  | NA  | This describes the type of 'plotting' to do. See ?Plots for possible types.<br>To omit, set to NA                                                                                                                                                      |
| .plotInterval    | numeric NA               | NA  | NA  | This describes the simulation time interval between plot events                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| .saveInitialTime | e numeric NA             | NA  | NA  | This describes the simulation time at which the first save event should occur                                                                                                                                                                          |
| .saveInterval    | numeric NA               | NA  | NA  | This describes the simulation time interval between save events                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| .seed            | list                     | NA  | NA  | Named list of seeds to use for each event (names). E.g., list('init' = 123) will set.seed(123) at the start of the init event and unset it at the end. Defaults to NULL, meaning that no seeds will be set                                             |
| .sslVerify       | integer 64               | NA  | NA  | Passed to httr::config(ssl_verifypeer = P(sim)\$.sslVerify) when downloading KNN (NFI) datasets. Set to OL if necessary to bypass checking the SSL certificate (this may be necessary when NFI's website SSL certificate is not correctly configured). |
| .studyAreaNam    | e characterNA            | NA  | NA  | Human-readable name for the study area used. If NA, a hash of studyArea will be used.                                                                                                                                                                  |
| .useCache        | character.inputOl        | oNA | NA  | Internal. Can be names of events or the whole module name; these will be cached by SpaDES                                                                                                                                                              |

# 5.2.7 List of outputs

The module produces the following outputs (Table 5.5), which are key inputs of *Biomass\_core*.

#### **Tables**

- cohortData initial community table, containing corrected biomass (g/m2), age and species cover data, as well as ecolocation and pixelGroup information. This table defines the initial community composition and structure used by Biomass\_core.
- species table of invariant species traits. Will contain the same traits as in speciesTable above, but adjusted where necessary.
- speciesEcoregion table of spatially-varying species traits (maxB, max-ANPP, SEP).
- minRelativeB minimum relative biomass thresholds that determine a shade level in each pixel. XO-5 represent site shade classes from no-shade (0) to maximum shade (5).
- sufficientLight probability of germination for species shade tolerance (in species) and shade level(defined byminRelativeB')

# Spatial layers

- biomassMap map of initial stand biomass values after adjustments for data mismatches.
- pixelGroupMap a map containing pixelGroup IDs per pixel. This defines
  the initial map used for hashing within Biomass\_core, in conjunction with
  cohortData.
- ecoregionMap map of ecolocations.

**TABLE 5.5:** List of *Biomass\_borealDataPrep* output objects and their description.

| objectName objectClass                                    | desc                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| biomassMapRasterLayer                                     | total biomass raster layer in study area, filtered for pixels covered by cohortData. Units in g/m2                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| cohortData data.table                                     | initial community table, containing corrected biomass (g/m2), age and species cover data, as well as ecolocation and pixelGroup information. This table defines the initial community composition and structure used by Biomass_core                                                                                                        |
| ecoregion data.table                                      | ecoregionGroup look up table                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| ecoregionMa <b>R</b> asterLayer                           | ecoregionGroup map that has mapcodes match ecoregion table and speciesEcoregion table                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| imputedPixI <b>D</b> nteger                               | A vector of pixel IDs - matching rasterMatch IDs - that suffered data imputation. Data imputation may be in age (to match last fire event post 1950s, or 0 cover), biomass (to match fire-related imputed ages, correct for missing values or for 0 age/cover), land cover (to convert non-forested classes into to nearest forested class) |
| pixelGroupM <b>Rp</b> sterLayer<br>pixelFateDT data.table | initial community map that has mapcodes (pixelGroup IDs) match cohortData A small table that keeps track of the pixel removals and cause. This may help diagnose issues related to understanding the creation of cohortData                                                                                                                 |
| minRelativeBdata.frame                                    | minimum relative biomass thresholds that determine a shade level in each pixel. X0-5 represent site shade classes from no-shade (0) to maximum shade (5).                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| modelCover data.frame                                     | If P(sim)\$exportModels is 'all', or 'cover', fitted cover model, as defined by P(sim)\$coverModel.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| modelBioma <b>sk</b> ata.frame                            | If P(sim)\$exportModels is 'all', or 'biomass', fitted biomass model, as defined by P(sim)\$biomassModel                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |

| Ŋ              |
|----------------|
| LandR          |
| Biomass        |
| borealDataPrep |
| ) Module       |

| objectName    | objectClass           | desc                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|---------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| rawBiomass    | <b>Map</b> terLayer   | total biomass raster layer in study area. Defaults to the Canadian Forestry Service, National Forest Inventory, kNN-derived total aboveground biomass map (in tonnes/ha) from 2001, unless 'dataYear' != 2001. See https://open.canada.ca/data/en/dataset/ec9e2659-1c29-4ddb-87a2-6aced147a990 for metadata                                         |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| species       | data.table            | a table that of invariant species traits. Will have the same traits as the input speciesTable with values adjusted where necessary                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| peciesEcore   | e <b>gitta</b> .table | table of spatially-varying species traits (maxB, maxANPP, establishprob), defined by species and ecoregionGroup)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| tudyArea      | SpatialPolygon        | sD <b>RodFgomt</b> o use as the study area corrected for any spatial properties' mismatches with respect to studyAreaLarge.                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| sufficientLig | d <b>la</b> ta.frame  | Probability of germination for species shade tolerance (in species) and shade level (defined byminRelativeB') combinations. Table values follow LANDIS-II test traits available at: https://raw.githubusercontent.com/LANDIS-II-Foundation/Extensions-Succession/master/biomass-succession-archive/trunk/tests/v6.0-2.0/biomass-succession_test.txt |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## 5.2.8 Simulation flow and module events

*Biomass\_borealDataPrep* initialises itself and prepares all inputs, provided it has internet access to retrieve the raw datasets, for parametrisation and use by *Biomass\_core*.

The module runs only for one time step and contains The general flow of *Biomass\_borealDataPrep* processes is:

- 1. Preparation of all necessary data and input objects that do not require parameter fitting (e.g., invariant species traits table, creating ecolocations);
- 2. Fixing mismatched between raw cover, biomass and age data;
- 3. Imputing age values in pixels where mismatches exist or age data is missing;
- 4. Construction of an initial data.table of cohort biomass and age per pixel (with ecolocation information);
- 5. Sub-setting pixels in forested land-cover classes and (optional) converting transient land-cover classes to forested classes;
- 6. Fitting coverModel;
- 7. Fitting biomassModel (and re-fitting if necessary optional);
- 8. Estimating maxB, maxANPP and SEP per species and ecolocation.
- 9. (OPTIONAL) Correcting ages in pixels inside fire perimeters and reassigning biomass.

[steps 1-9 are part of the init event. Before step 1, the data is downloaded when during the run of the .inputObjects function]

- 10. (OPTIONAL) Plots of maxB, maxANPP and SEP maps (plot event);
- 11. (OPTIONAL) Save outputs (save event)

# 5.3 Usage example

This module can be run stand-alone, but it won't do much more than prepare inputs for Biomass\_core. Hence, we provide a usage example of this module and a few others in this repository<sup>17</sup> and in Barros et al. [3].

# 5.4 References

- [3] Ceres Barros et al. "Empowering ecological modellers with a PERFICT workflow: Seamlessly linking data, parameterisation, prediction, validation and visualisation". In: *Methods in Ecology and Evolution* 14 (2023), pp. 173–188. DOI: 10.1111/2041-210X.14034<sup>18</sup>.
- [5] A Beaudoin et al. Species composition, forest properties and land cover types across Canada's forests at 250m resolution for 2001 and 2011. 2017. DOI: 10. 23687 / EC9E2659 1C29 4DDB 87A2 6ACED147A990<sup>19</sup>. URL: http://open.canada.ca/data/en/dataset/ec9e2659 1c29 4ddb 87a2 6aced147a990.
- [6] P J Burton and S G Cumming. "Potential effects of climatic change on some western Canadian forests, based on phenological enhancements to a patch model of forest succession". In: *Water, Air and Soil Pollution* 82 (1995), pp. 401–414.
- [10] E. H. (Ted) Hogg, J. P. Brandt, and M. Michaelian. "Impacts of a regional drought on the productivity, dieback, and biomass of western Canadian aspen forests". In: Canadian Journal of Forest Research 38.6 (June 2008), pp. 1373–1384. ISSN: 0045-5067, 1208-6037. DOI: 10.1139/X08-001.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>17</sup>https://github.com/CeresBarros/LandRBiomass\_publication

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>18</sup>https://doi.org/10.1111/2041-210X.14034

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>19</sup>https://doi.org/10.23687/EC9E2659-1C29-4DDB-87A2-6ACED147A990

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>20</sup>https://doi.org/10.1139/X08-001

5.4 References 111

[12] Christian Messier, Sylvain Parent, and Yves Bergeron. "Effects of overstory and understory vegetation on the understory light environment in mixed boreal forests". In: *Journal of Vegetation Science* 9.4 (Aug. 1998), pp. 511–520. ISSN: 11009233. DOI: 10.2307/3237266<sup>21</sup>. URL: http://doi.wiley.com/10.2307/3237266.

- [13] NRCan. National Ecological Framework for Canada Terrestrial Ecozones. 2013.
- [14] Changhui Peng et al. "A drought-induced pervasive increase in tree mortality across Canada's boreal forests". In: *Nature Climate Change* 1.9 (Dec. 2011), pp. 467–471. ISSN: 1758-678X, 1758-6798. DOI: 10.1038/nclimate1293<sup>22</sup>. URL: http://www.nature.com/articles/nclimate1293.
- [21] Robert M. Scheller and Brian R. Miranda. LANDIS-II Biomass Succession v3.2 Extension User Guide. 2015.
- [22] Robert M. Scheller and David J. Mladenoff. "A forest growth and biomass module for a landscape simulation model, LANDIS: design, validation, and application". In: Ecological Modelling 180.1 (Dec. 2004), pp. 211–229. DOI: 10.1016/j.ecolmodel.2004.01.022<sup>23</sup>. URL: https://linkinghub.elsevier.com/retrieve/pii/S0304380004003837.
- [25] Mark D. Wilkinson et al. "The FAIR Guiding Principles for scientific data management and stewardship". In: Scientific Data 3.1 (Dec. 2016), p. 160018. ISSN: 2052-4463. DOI: 10.1038/sdata.2016.18<sup>24</sup>. URL: http://www.nature.com/articles/sdata201618.

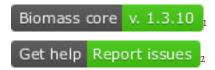
<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>21</sup>https://doi.org/10.2307/3237266

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>22</sup>https://doi.org/10.1038/nclimate1293

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>23</sup>https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ecolmodel.2004.01.022

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>24</sup>https://doi.org/10.1038/sdata.2016.18

# LandR Biomass\_core Module



## 6.0.0.1 Authors:

Yong Luo yluo1@lakeheadu.ca³ [aut], Eliot J B McIntire eliot.mcintire@ nrcan-rncan.gc.ca⁴ [aut, cre], Ceres Barros ceres.barros@ubc.ca⁵ [aut], Alex M. Chubaty achubaty@for-cast.ca⁶ [aut], Ian Eddy ian.eddy@nrcan-rncan.gc.ca² [ctb], Jean Marchal jean.d.marchal@gmail.com⁶ [ctb]

This documentation is work in progress. Potential discrepancies and omissions may exist for the time being. If you find any, contact us using the "Get help" link above.

# 6.1 Module Overview

# 6.1.1 Quick links

- General functioning
- List of input objects

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>https://github.com/PredictiveEcology/Biomass\_core

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup>https://github.com/PredictiveEcology/Biomass\_core/issues

³mailto:yluo1@lakeheadu.ca

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>4</sup>mailto:eliot.mcintire@nrcan-rncan.gc.ca

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>5</sup>mailto:ceres.barros@ubc.ca

<sup>6</sup>mailto:achubaty@for-cast.ca

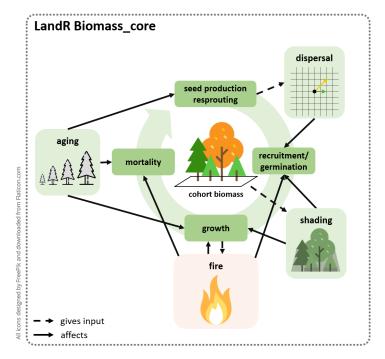
<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>7</sup>mailto:ian.eddy@nrcan-rncan.gc.ca

 $<sup>^8</sup>$  mailto:jean.d.marchal@gmail.com

- List of parameters
- · List of outputs
- · Simulation flow and module events

# 6.1.2 Summary

LandR *Biomass\_core* (hereafter *Biomass\_core*) is the core forest succession simulation module of the LandR ecosystem of SpaDES modules [see 8]. It simulates tree cohort ageing, growth, mortality and competition for light resources, as well as seed dispersal (Fig. 6.1), in a spatially explicit manner and using a yearly time step. The model is based on the LANDIS-II Biomass Succession Extension v.3.2.1 [LBSE, 20], with a few changes (see Differences between *Biomass\_core* and LBSE). Nonetheless, the essential functioning of the succession model still largely follows its LANDIS-II counterpart, and we refer the reader to the corresponding LBSE manual [20] for a detailed reading of the mechanisms implemented in the model.



**FIGURE 6.1:** Biomass\_core simulates tree cohort growth, mortality, recruitment and dispersal dynamics, as a function of cohort ageing and competition for light (shading) and space, as well as disturbances like fire (simulated using other modules).

## 6.1.3 Links to other modules

Biomass\_core is intended to be used with data/calibration modules, disturbance modules and validation modules, amongst others. The following is a list of the modules most commonly used with Biomass\_core. For those not yet in the LandR Manual<sup>9</sup> see the individual module's documentation (.Rmd file) available in its repository.

See here <sup>10</sup> for all available modules and select *Biomass\_core* from the drop-down menu to see linkages.

## Data and calibration modules:

<sup>9</sup>https://landr-manual.predictiveecology.org/

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>10</sup>https://rpubs.com/PredictiveEcology/LandR\_Module\_Ecosystem

- Biomass\_speciesData<sup>11</sup>: grabs and merges several sources of species cover data, making species percent cover (% cover) layers used by other LandR Biomass modules. Default source data spans the entire Canadian territory;
- Biomass\_borealDataPrep<sup>12</sup>: prepares all parameters and inputs (including initial landscape conditions) that Biomass\_core needs to run a realistic simulation. Default values/inputs produced are relevant for boreal forests of Western Canada;
- Biomass\_speciesParameters<sup>13</sup>: calibrates four-species level traits using permanent sample plot data (i.e., repeated tree biomass measurements) across Western Canada.

## Disturbance-related modules:

- Biomass\_regeneration<sup>14</sup>: simulates cohort biomass responses to stand-replacing fires (as in LBSE), including cohort mortality and regeneration through resprouting and/or serotiny;
- Biomass\_regenerationPM<sup>15</sup>: like Biomass\_regeneration, but allowing partial mortality. Based on the LANDIS-II Dynamic Fuels & Fire System extension [23];
- fireSense: climate- and land-cover-sensitive fire model simulating fire ignition, escape and spread processes as a function of climate and land-cover. Includes built-in parameterisation of these processes using climate, land-cover, fire occurrence and fire perimeter data. Requires using Biomass\_regeneration or Biomass\_regenerationPM. See modules prefixed "fire-Sense\_" at https://github.com/PredictiveEcology/;
- LandMine<sup>16</sup>: wildfire ignition and cover-sensitive wildfire spread model based on a fire return interval input. Requires using Biomass\_regeneration or Biomass\_regenerationPM;
- scfm<sup>17</sup>: spatially explicit fire spread module parameterised and modelled as a stochastic three-part process of ignition, escape, and spread. Requires using Biomass\_regeneration or Biomass\_regenerationPM.

<sup>11</sup>https://github.com/PredictiveEcology/Biomass\_speciesData

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>12</sup>https://github.com/PredictiveEcology/Biomass\_borealDataPrep

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>13</sup>https://github.com/PredictiveEcology/Biomass\_speciesParameters

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>14</sup>https://github.com/PredictiveEcology/Biomass\_regeneration

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>15</sup>https://github.com/PredictiveEcology/Biomass\_regenerationPM

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>16</sup>https://github.com/PredictiveEcology/LandMine

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>17</sup>https://github.com/PredictiveEcology/scfm

## Validation modules:

Biomass\_validationKNN<sup>18</sup>: calculates two validation metrics (mean absolute deviation and sum of negative log-likelihoods) on species presences/absences and biomass-related properties across the simulated landscape. By default, it uses an independent dataset of species % cover and stand biomass for 2011, assuming that this is a second snapshot of the landscape.

# 6.2 Module manual

# 6.2.1 General functioning

Biomass\_core is a forest landscape model based on the LANDIS-II Biomass Succession Extension v.3.2.1 model [LBSE, 20]. It is the core forest succession model of the LandR ecosystem of Spades modules. Similarly to LBSE, Biomass\_core simulates changes in tree cohort aboveground biomass  $(g/m^2)$  by calculating growth, mortality and recruitment as functions of pixel and species characteristics, competition and disturbances (Fig. 6.1). Note that, by default, cohorts are unique combinations of species and age, but this can be changed via the cohortDefinitionCols parameter (see List of parameters).

Specifically, cohort growth is driven by both invariant (growth shape parameter, growthcurve) and spatio-temporally varying species traits (maximum biomass, maxB, and maximum annual net primary productivity, max-ANPP), while background mortality (i.e., not caused by disturbances) depends only on invariant species traits (longevity and mortality shape parameter, mortalityshape). All these five traits directly influence the realised shape of species growth curves, by determining how fast they grow (growthcurve and maxANPP), how soon age mortality starts with respect to longevity (mortalityshape) and the biomass a cohort can potentially achieve (maxB).

Cohort recruitment is determined by available "space" (i.e., pixel shade),

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>18</sup>https://github.com/PredictiveEcology/Biomass\_validationKNN

invariant species traits (regeneration mode, postfireregen, age at maturity, sexualmature, shade tolerance, shadetolerance) and a third spatio-temporally varying trait (species establishment probability, establishprob, called SEP hereafter). The available "growing space" is calculated as the species' maxB minus the occupied biomass (summed across other cohorts in the pixel). If there is "space", a cohort can establish from one of three recruitment modes: serotiny, resprouting and germination.

Disturbances (e.g., fire) can cause cohort mortality and trigger post-disturbance regeneration. Two post-disturbance regeneration mechanisms have been implemented, following LBSE: serotiny and resprouting [20]. Post-disturbance mortality and regeneration only occur in response to fire and are simulated in two separate, but interchangeable modules, *Biomass\_regeneration* and *Biomass\_regenerationPM* that differ with respect to the level of post-fire mortality they simulate (complete or partial mortality, respectively).

Cohort germination (also called cohort establishment) occurs if seeds are available from local sources (the pixel), or via seed dispersal. Seed dispersal can be of three modes: 'no dispersal', 'universal dispersal' (arguably, only interesting for dummy case studies) or 'ward dispersal' [20]. Briefly, the 'ward dispersal' algorithm describes a flexible kernel that calculates the probability of a species colonising a neighbour pixel as a function of distance from the source and dispersal-related (and invariant) species traits, and is used by default.

Finally, both germination and regeneration success depend on the species' probability of germination in a given pixel (probabilities of germination).

We refer the reader to Scheller and Miranda [20], Scheller and Domingo [19] and Scheller and Domingo [18] for further details with respect to the above mentioned mechanisms implemented in *Biomass\_core*. In a later section of this manual, we highlight existing differences between *Biomass\_core* and LBSE, together with comparisons between the two modules.

## 6.2.2 Initialisation, inputs and parameters

To initialise and simulate forest dynamics in any given landscape, *Biomass\_core* requires a number of inputs and parameters namely:

initial cohort biomass and age values across the landscape;

- invariant species traits values;
- spatio-temporally varying species traits values (or just spatially-varying);
- location- (ecolocation-) specific parameters;
- and the probabilities of germination given a species' shade tolerance and site shade.

These are detailed below and in the full list of input objects. The *Biomass\_borealDataPrep* module manual also provides information about the estimation of many of these traits/inputs from available data, or their adjustment using published values or our best knowledge of boreal forest dynamics in Western Canada.

Unlike the initialisation in LBSE<sup>19</sup>, *Biomass\_core* initialises the simulation using data-derived initial cohort biomass and age. This information is ideally supplied by data and calibration modules like *Biomass\_borealDataPrep* (Links to other modules), but *Biomass\_core* can also initialise itself using theoretical data.

Similarly, although *Biomass\_core* can create all necessary traits and parameters using theoretical values, for realistic simulations these should be provided by data and calibration modules, like *Biomass\_borealDataPrep* and *Biomass\_speciesParameters*. We advise future users and developers to become familiar with these data modules and then try to create their own modules (or modify existing ones) for their purpose.

# 6.2.2.1 Initial cohort biomass and age

Initial cohort biomass and age are derived from stand biomass (biomassMap raster layer), stand age (standAgeMap raster layer) and species % cover (speciesLayers raster layers) data (see Table 6.7) and formatted into the cohortData object. The cohortData table is a central simulation object that tracks the current year's cohort biomass, age, mortality (lost biomass) and aboveground net primary productivity (ANPP) per species and pixel group (pixelGroup). At the start of the simulation, cohortData will not have any values of cohort mortality or ANPP.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>19</sup> in LBSE the initialisation consists in "iterat[ing] the number of time steps equal to the maximum cohort age for each site", beginning at 0 minus t (t= oldest cohort age) and adding cohorts at the appropriate time until the initial simulation time is reached (0) [20].

Each pixelGroup is a collection of pixels that share the same ecolocation (coded in the ecoregionMap raster layer) and the same cohort composition. By default, an ecolocation is a combination of land-cover and ecological zonation (see ecoregionMap in the full list of inputs) and unique cohort compositions are defined as unique combinations of species, age and biomass. The cohortData table is therefore always associated with the current year's pixelGroupMap raster layer, which provides the spatial location of all pixelGroups, allowing to "spatialise" cohort information and dynamics (e.g., dispersal) on a pixel by pixel basis (see also Hashing).

The user, or another module, may provide initial cohortData and pixelGroupMap objects to start the simulation, or the input objects necessary to produce them: a study area polygon (studyArea), the biomassMap, standAgeMap, speciesLayers and ecoregionMap raster layers (see the list of input objects for more detail).

## 6.2.2.2 Invariant species traits

These are spatio-temporally constant traits that mostly influence population dynamics (e.g., growth, mortality, dispersal) and responses to fire (fire tolerance and regeneration).

By default, *Biomass\_core* obtains trait values from available LANDIS-II tables (see Table 6.7), but traits can be adjusted/supplied by the user or by other modules. For instance, using *Biomass\_borealDataPrep* will adjust some trait values for Western Canadian boreal forests [e.g., longevity values are adjusted following 7], while using *Biomass\_speciesParameters* calibrates the growthcurve and mortalityshape parameters and estimates two additional species traits (inflationFactor and mANPPproportion) to calibrate maxB and maxANPP (respectively).

Table 6.1 shows an example of a table of invariant species traits. Note that *Biomass\_core* (alone) requires all the columns Table 6.1 in to be present, with the exception of firetolerance, postfireregen, resproutprob, resproutage\_min and resproutage\_max, which are used by the post-fire regeneration modules (*Biomass\_regeneration* and *Biomass\_regenerationPM*).

Please see Scheller and Domingo [19, p.18] and Scheller and Miranda [20, p.16] for further detail.

**TABLE 6.1:** Example of an invariant species traits table (the species table object in the module), with species *Abies sp.* (Abie\_sp), *Picea engelmannii* (Pice\_eng), *Picea glauca* (Pice\_gla), *Pinus sp.* (Pinu\_sp), *Populus sp.* (Popu\_sp) and *Pseudotsuga menziesii* (Pseu\_men). Note that these are theoretical values. (continued below)

| speciesCode | longevity | sexualmature | shadetolerance | firetolerance |
|-------------|-----------|--------------|----------------|---------------|
| Abie_sp     | 200       | 20           | 2.3            | 1             |
| Pice_eng    | 460       | 30           | 2.1            | 2             |
| Pice_gla    | 400       | 30           | 1.6            | 2             |
| Pinu_sp     | 150       | 15           | 1              | 2             |
| Popu_sp     | 140       | 20           | 1              | 1             |
| Pseu_men    | 525       | 25           | 2              | 3             |

**TABLE 6.2:** Table continues below

| postfireregen | resproutprob | resproutage_min | resproutage_max |
|---------------|--------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| none          | 0            | 0               | 0               |
| none          | 0            | 0               | 0               |
| none          | 0            | 0               | 0               |
| serotiny      | 0            | 0               | 0               |
| resprout      | 0.5          | 10              | 70              |
| none          | 0            | 0               | 0               |

| seeddistance_eff | seeddistance_max | mortalityshape | growthcurve |
|------------------|------------------|----------------|-------------|
| 25               | 100              | 15             | 0           |
| 30               | 250              | 15             | 1           |
| 100              | 303              | 15             | 1           |
| 30               | 100              | 15             | 0           |
| 200              | 5000             | 25             | 0           |
| 100              | 500              | 15             | 1           |

# 6.2.2.3 Spatio-temporally varying species traits

These traits vary between species, by ecolocation and, potentially, by year if the year column is not omitted and several years exist (in which case last year's values up to the current simulation year are always used). They are maximum biomass, maxB, maximum above-ground net primary productivity, maxANPP, and species establishment probability, SEP (called establishprob in the module). By default, *Biomass\_core* assigns theoretical values to these traits, and thus we recommend using *Biomass\_borealDataPrep* to obtain realistic trait values derived from data (by default, pertinent for Canadian boreal forest applications), or passing a custom table directly. *Biomass\_speciesParameters* further calibrates maxB and maxANPP by estimating two additional invariant species traits (inflationFactor and manperoportion; also for Western Canadian forests). See Table 6.4 for an example.

123

**TABLE 6.4:** Example of a spatio-temporally varying species traits table (the speciesEcoregion table object in the module), with two ecolocations (called ecoregionGroups) and species *Abies sp.* (Abie\_sp), *Picea engelmannii* (Pice\_eng), *Picea glauca* (Pice\_gla), *Pinus sp.* (Pinu\_sp), *Populus sp.* (Popu\_sp) and *Pseudotsuga menziesii* (Pseu\_men). If a simulation runs for 10 year using this table, trait values from year 2 would be used during simulation years 2-10.

| ecoregionGroup | speciesCode | establishprob | maxB  | maxANPP | year |
|----------------|-------------|---------------|-------|---------|------|
| 1_03           | Abie_sp     | 1             | 8567  | 285     | 1    |
| 1_03           | Pice_eng    | 0.983         | 10156 | 305     | 1    |
| 1_03           | Popu_sp     | 0.737         | 8794  | 293     | 1    |
| 1_03           | Pseu_men    | 1             | 17534 | 132     | 1    |
| 1_09           | Abie_sp     | 0.112         | 1499  | 50      | 1    |
| 1_09           | Pice_gla    | 0.302         | 3143  | 102     | 1    |
| 1_09           | Pinu_sp     | 0.714         | 2569  | 86      | 1    |
| 1_09           | Popu_sp     | 0.607         | 3292  | 110     | 1    |
| 1_09           | Pseu_men    | 0.997         | 6020  | 45      | 1    |
| 1_03           | Abie_sp     | 0.989         | 8943  | 225     | 2    |
| 1_03           | Pice_eng    | 0.985         | 9000  | 315     | 2    |
| 1_03           | Popu_sp     | 0.6           | 8600  | 273     | 2    |
| 1_03           | Pseu_men    | 1             | 13534 | 142     | 2    |
| 1_09           | Abie_sp     | 0.293         | 2099  | 45      | 2    |
| 1_09           | Pice_gla    | 0.745         | 3643  | 90      | 2    |
| 1_09           | Pinu_sp     | 0.5           | 2569  | 80      | 2    |

| ecoregionGroup | speciesCode | establishprob | maxB | maxANPP | year |
|----------------|-------------|---------------|------|---------|------|
| 1_09           | Popu_sp     | 0.67          | 3262 | 111     | 2    |
| 1_09           | Pseu_men    | 1             | 6300 | 43      | 2    |

# 6.2.2.4 Ecolocation-specific parameters - minimum relative biomass

Minimum relative biomass (minRelativeB) is the only ecolocation-specific parameter used in *Biomass\_core*. It is used to determine the shade level in each pixel (i.e., site shade) with respect to the total potential maximum biomass for that pixel (i.e., the sum of all maxB values in the pixel's ecolocation). If relative biomass in the stand (with regards to the total potential maximum biomass) is above the minimum relative biomass thresholds, the pixel is assigned that threshold's site shade value [20].

The shade level then influences the germination and regeneration of new cohorts, depending on their shade tolerance (see Probabilities of germination).

Site shade varies from XO (no shade) to X5 (maximum shade). By default, *Biomass\_core* uses the same minimum realtive biomass threshold values across all ecolocations, adjusted from a publicly available LANDIS-II table<sup>20</sup> to better reflect Western Canada boreal forest dynamics (see Table 6.5). *Biomass\_borealDataPrep* does the same adjustment by default. As with other inputs, these values can be adjusted by using other modules or by passing user-defined tables.

**TABLE 6.5:** Example of a minimum relative biomass table (the minRelativeB table object in the module), with two ecolocations (ecoregionGroups) sharing the same values

| ecoregionGroup |      |      |     |      |      |
|----------------|------|------|-----|------|------|
| 1_03           | 0.15 | 0.25 | 0.5 | 0.75 | 0.85 |
| 1_09           | 0.15 | 0.25 | 0.5 | 0.75 | 0.85 |

## 6.2.2.5 Probabilities of germination

A species' probability of germination results from the combination of its shade tolerance level (an invariant species trait in the species table;

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>20</sup>https://github.com/dcyr/LANDIS-II\_IA\_generalUseFiles

Table 6.1) and the site shade [minimum relative biomass parameter] and][p.14]SchellerMiranda2015. By default, both *Biomass\_core* and *Biomass\_borealDataPrep* use a publicly available LANDIS-II table (called sufficientLight in the module; Table 6.6).

**TABLE 6.6:** Default species probability of germination values used by *Biomass\_core* and *Biomass\_borealDataPrep*. Columns XO-X5 are different site shade levels and each line has the probability of germination for each site shade and species shade tolerance combination.

| species shade |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|---------------|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| tolerance     | XO | X1 | X2 | X3 | X4 | X5 |
| 1             | 1  | 0  | 0  | 0  | 0  | 0  |
| 2             | 1  | 1  | 0  | 0  | 0  | 0  |
| 3             | 1  | 1  | 1  | 0  | 0  | 0  |
| 4             | 1  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 0  | 0  |
| 5             | 0  | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 1  |

## 6.2.2.6 Other module inputs

The remaining module input objects either do not directly influence the basic mechanisms implemented in *Biomass\_core* (e.g., sppColorVect and studyAreaReporting are only used for plotting purposes), are objects that keep track of a property/process in the module (e.g., lastReg is a counter of the last year when regeneration occurred), or define the study area for the simulation (e.g., studyArea and rasterToMatch).

The next section provides a complete list of all input objects, including those already mentioned above.

# 6.2.3 List of input objects

All of *Biomass\_core*'s input objects have (theoretical) defaults that are produced automatically by the module<sup>21</sup>. We suggest that new users run *Biomass\_core* by itself supplying only a studyArea polygon, before attempting to supply their own or combining *Biomass\_core* with other modules. This

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>21</sup>usually, default inputs are made when running the .inputObjects function (inside the module R script) during the simInit call and in the init event during the spades call — see ?SpaDES.core::events and SpaDES.core::simInit

will enable them to become familiar with all the input objects in a theoretical setting.

Of the inputs listed in Table 6.7, the following are particularly important and deserve special attention:

# Spatial layers

- ecoregionMap a raster layer with ecolocation IDs. Note that the term "ecoregion" was inherited from LBSE and kept for consistency with original LBSE code, but we prefer to call them ecolocations to avoid confusion with the ecoregion-level classification of the National Ecological Classification of Canada (NECC)<sup>22</sup>. Ecolocations group pixels with similar biophysical conditions. By default, we use two levels of grouping in our applications: the first level being an ecological classification such as ecodistricts from the NECC, and the second level is a land-cover classification. Hence, these ecolocations contain relatively coarse scale regional information plus finer scale land cover information. The ecoregion Map layer must be defined as a categorical raster, with an associated Raster Attribute Table (RAT; see, e.g., raster::ratify). The RAT must contain the columns: ID (the value in the raster layer), ecoregion (the first level of grouping) and ecoregionGroup (the full ecolocation "name" written as <firstlevel\_secondlevel>). Note that if creating ecoregionGroup's by combining two raster layers whose values are numeric (as in Biomass\_borealDataPrep), the group label is a character combination of two numeric grouping levels. For instance, if Natural Ecoregion 2 has land-cover types 1, 2 and 3, the RAT will contain ID =  $\{1,2,3\}$ , ecoregion =  $\{2\}$  and ecoregionGroup =  $\{2_1, 2_2, 2_3\}$ . However, the user is free to use any groupings they wish. Finally, note that all ecolocations (ecoregionGroup's) are should be listed in the ecoregion table.
- rasterToMatch a RasterLayer, with a given resolution and projection determining the pixels (i.e., non-NA values) where forest dynamics will be simulated. Needs to match studyArea. If not supplied, Biomass\_core attempts to produce it from studyArea, using biomassMap as the template for spatial resolution and projection.
- studyArea a SpatialPolygonsDataFrame with a single polygon determining the where the simulation will take place. This is the only input object that **must be supplied by the user or another module**.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>22</sup>https://open.canada.ca/data/en/dataset/3ef8e8a9-8d05-4fea-a8bf-7f5023d2b6e1

# Species traits and other parameter tables

ecoregion – a data.table listing all ecolocation "names" (ecoregionGroup column; see ecoregionMap above for details) and their state (active – yes – or inactive – no)

- minRelativeB a data.table of minimum relative biomass values. See Ecolocation-specific parameters minimum relative biomass.
- species a data.table of invariant species traits.
- speciesEcoregion a data.table of spatio-temporally varying species traits.
- sufficientLight a data.table defining the probability of germination for a species, given its shadetolerance level (see species above) and the shade level in the pixel (see minRelativeB above). See Probabilities of germination.
- sppEquiv a data.table of species name equivalences between various conventions. It must contain the columns <code>LandR</code> (species IDs in the LandR format), <code>EN\_generic\_short</code> (short generic species names in English or any other language used for plotting), <code>Type</code> (type of species, <code>Conifer</code> or <code>Deciduous</code>, as in "broadleaf") and <code>Leading</code> (same as <code>EN\_generic\_short</code> but with "leading" appended e.g., "Poplar leading"). See <code>?LandR::sppEquivalencies\_CA</code> for more information.
- sppColorVect character. A named vector of colours used to plot species dynamics. Should contain one colour per species in the species table and, potentially a colour for species mixtures (named "Mixed"). Vector names must follow species\$speciesCode.
- sppNameVector (OPTIONAL) a character vector of species to be simulated. If provided, *Biomass\_core* uses this vector to (attempt to) obtain speciesLayers for the listed species. If not provided, the user (or another module) can pass a filtered sppEquiv table (i.e., containing only the species that are to be simulated). If neither is provided, then *Biomass\_core* attempts to use any species for which if finds available species % cover data in the study area.

# Cohort-simulation-related objects

- cohortData a data.table containing initial cohort information per pixelGroup (see pixelGroupMap below). This table is updated during the simulation as cohort dynamics are simulated. It must contain the following columns:
  - pixelGroup integer. pixelGroup ID. See Hashing.
  - ecoregionGroup character. Ecolocation names. See ecoregionMap and ecoregion objects above.
  - speciesCode character. Species ID.
  - age integer. Cohort age.
  - B integer. Cohort biomass of the current year in  $g/m^2$ .
  - mortality integer. Cohort dead biomass of the current year in  $g/m^2$ . Usually filled with 0s in initial conditions.
  - aNPPAct integer. Actual above ground net primary productivity of the current year in  $g/m^2$ . B is the result of the previous year's B minus the current year's mortality plus and an ageing section of Scheller and Miranda [20].
- pixelGroupMap a raster layer with pixelGroup IDs per pixel. Pixels are always grouped based on identical ecoregionGroup, speciesCode, age and B composition, even if the user supplies other initial groupings (e.g., this is possible in the Biomass\_borealDataPrep data module).

**TABLE 6.7:** List of *Biomass\_core* input objects and their description.

| objectName | objectClass  | desc                                                             | sourceURL |
|------------|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| biomassMap | RasterLaye r | total biomass raster layer in study area (in $g/m^2$ ), filtered |           |
| _          | ·            | for pixels cover ed by cohortData. Only used if P(sim)           |           |
|            |              | <pre>\$initialBiomassSource == 'biomassMap', which is</pre>      |           |
|            |              | currently deactivated.                                           |           |
| cceArgs    | list         | a list of quoted objects used by the gr                          | NA        |
|            |              | owthAndMortalityDrivercalculateClimat eEffect                    |           |
|            |              | function                                                         |           |
| cohortData | data.table   | data. table with cohort-level informati on on age and            | NA        |
|            |              | biomass, by pixelGroup and ecolocation (i.e.,                    |           |
|            |              | ecoregionGroup). If supplied, it must have the following c       |           |
|            |              | olumns: pixelGroup (integer), ecoregi onGroup (factor),          |           |
|            |              | speciesCode (factor ), B (integer in $g/m^2$ ), age (integer in  |           |
|            |              | years)                                                           |           |

| 7       |   |  |
|---------|---|--|
| 222     | 7 |  |
| ZIOM SS |   |  |
| 2020    |   |  |
| olupol  | - |  |

| objectName    | objectClass  | desc                                                                                                                                                      | sourceURL                |
|---------------|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| ecoregion     | data.table   | ecoregion look up table                                                                                                                                   | https://ra<br>w.githubus |
|               |              |                                                                                                                                                           | ercontent.               |
|               |              |                                                                                                                                                           | com/LANDIS               |
|               |              |                                                                                                                                                           | -II-Founda               |
|               |              |                                                                                                                                                           | tion/Exten               |
|               |              |                                                                                                                                                           | sions-Succ               |
|               |              |                                                                                                                                                           | ession/mas               |
|               |              |                                                                                                                                                           | ter/biomas               |
|               |              |                                                                                                                                                           | s-successi               |
|               |              |                                                                                                                                                           | on-archive               |
|               |              |                                                                                                                                                           | /trunk/tes               |
|               |              |                                                                                                                                                           | ts/v6.0-2.               |
|               |              |                                                                                                                                                           | O/ecoregio ns.txt        |
| ecoregionM ap | RasterLaye r | ecoregion map that has mapcodes match ec oregion table<br>and speciesEcoregion table. Defaults to a dummy map<br>matching ra sterToMatch with two regions | NA                       |
| lastReg       | numeric      | an internal counter keeping track of whe n the last regeneration event occurred                                                                           | NA                       |
| minRelativ eB | data.frame   | table defining the relative biomass cut points to classify stand shadeness.                                                                               | NA                       |

| objectName        | objectClass  | desc                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | sourceURL                                                                                             |
|-------------------|--------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| pixelGroup Map    | RasterLaye r | a raster layer with pixelGroup IDs per pixel. Pixels are grouped based on iden tical ecoregionGroup, speciesCode, age and B composition, even if the us er supplies other initial groupings (e.g., via the Biomass_borealDataPrep module.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | NA                                                                                                    |
| rasterToMa tch    | RasterLaye r | a raster of the studyArea in the same resolution and projection as biomassMap                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | NA                                                                                                    |
| species           | data.table   | a table of invariant species traits with the following trait colums: 'species', 'Area', 'longevity', 'sexualmature', 'sh adetolerance', 'firetolerance', 'seeddis tance_eff', 'seeddistance_max', 'resprou tprob', 'mortalityshape', 'growthcurve', 'resproutage_min', 'resproutage_max',' postfireregen', 'wooddecayrate', 'leaflo ngevity' 'leafLignin', 'hardsoft'. The l ast seven traits are not used in Biomass _core , and may be ommited. However, thi s may result in downstream issues with o ther modules. Default is from Dominic Cy r and Yan Boulanger's project | https://ra w.githubus ercontent. com/dcyr/L ANDIS-II_I A_generalU seFiles/ma ster/speci esTraits.c sv |
| speciesEco region | data.table   | table of spatially-varying species trait s (maxB, maxANPP, establishprob), defined by species and ecoregionGroup) Defaults to a dummy table based on dumm y data os biomass, age, ecoregion and land cover class                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | NA                                                                                                    |

| objectName     | objectClass  | desc                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | sourceURL                                                                                                                                                |
|----------------|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| speciesLay ers | RasterStac k | percent cover raster layers of tree spec ies in Canada.  Defaults to the Canadian Forestry Service, National Forest Invent ory, kNN-derived species cover maps from 2001 using a cover threshold of 10 - se e https://open.canada.ca/data/en/dataset /ec9e2659-1c29-4ddb-87a2-6aced147a990 fo r metadata | http://ftp .maps.cana da.ca/pub/ nrcan_rnca n/Forests_ Foret/cana da-forests -attribute s_attribut s-forests- canada/200 1-attribut es_attribut ts-2001/ |
| sppColorVe ct  | character    | A named vector of colors to use for plot ting. The names must be in sim\$sppEquiv [[sim\$sppEquivCol]], and should also co ntain a color for 'Mixed'.                                                                                                                                                    | NA                                                                                                                                                       |
| sppEquiv       | data.table   | table of species equivalencies. See Lan dR::sppEquivalencies_CA.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | NA                                                                                                                                                       |

| objectName             | objectClass                   | desc                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | sourceURL |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| sppNameVec tor         | character                     | an optional vector of species names to be pulled from sppEquiv. Species names must match P(sim)\$sppEquivCol column in sppEquiv. If not provided, then species will be taken from the entire P(sim)\$sppEquivCol column in sppEquiv. See LandR::sppEquivalencies_CA. | NA        |
| studyArea              | SpatialPol<br>ygonsDataF rame | Polygon to use as the study area. Must be provided by the user                                                                                                                                                                                                       | NA        |
| studyAreaR<br>eporting | SpatialPol<br>ygonsDataF rame | multipolygon (typically smaller/unbuffer ed than studyArea) to use for plotting/r eporting. Defaults to studyArea.                                                                                                                                                   | NA        |

| - | 6 LandR Biomass_core Module |
|---|-----------------------------|

| objectName                                | objectClass | desc                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | sourceURL                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-------------------------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| sufficient Light                          | data.frame  | table defining how the species with diff erent shade tolerance respond to stand s hade. Default is based on LANDIS-II Biom ass Succession v6.2 parameters                                                                   | https://ra w.githubus ercontent. com/LANDIS -II-Founda tion/Exten sions-Succ ession/mas ter/biomas s-successi on-archive /trunk/tes ts/v6.0-2. O/biomass- succession _test.txt |
| treedFireP<br>ixelTableS<br>inceLastDi sp | data.table  | 3 columns: pixelIndex, pixelGroup, a nd burnTime. Each row represents a for ested pixel that was burned up to and in cluding this year, since last dispersal event, with its corresponding pixelGrou p and time it occurred | NA NA                                                                                                                                                                          |

135

# 6.2.4 List of parameters

In addition to the above inputs objects, *Biomass\_core* uses several parameters<sup>23</sup> that control aspects like the simulation length, the "succession" time step, plotting and saving intervals, amongst others. Note that a few of these parameters are only relevant when simulating climate effects of cohort growth and mortality, which require also loading the LandR.CS R package<sup>24</sup> (or another similar package). These are not discussed in detail here, since climate effects are calculated externally to *Biomass\_core* in LandR.CS functions and thus documented there.

A list of useful parameters and their description is listed below, while the full set of parameters is in Table 6.8. Like with input objects, default values are supplied for all parameters and we suggest the user becomes familiarized with them before attempting any changes. We also note that the "spin-up" and "biomassMap" options for the initialBiomassSource parameter are currently deactivated, since *Biomass\_core* no longer generates initial cohort biomass conditions using a spin-up based on initial stand age like LANDIS-II ("spin-up"), nor does it attempt to fill initial cohort biomasses using biomassMap.

**Plotting and saving** - .plots - activates/deactivates plotting and defines type of plotting (see ?Plots);

- .plotInitialTime defines when plotting starts;
- .plotInterval defines plotting frequency;
- .plotMaps activates/deactivates map plotting;
- .saveInitialTime defines when saving starts;
- .saveInterval defines saving frequency;

## Simulation

- seedingAlgorithm dispersal type (see above);
- successionTimestep defines frequency of dispersal/local recruitment event (growth and mortality are always yearly);

 $<sup>^{23}</sup>$ in SpaDES lingo parameters are "small" objects, such as an integer or boolean, that can be controlled via the parameters argument in simInit.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>24</sup>https://github.com/ianmseddy/LandR.CS

# Other

- mixedType how mixed forest stands are defined;
- vegLeadingProportion relative biomass threshold to consider a species "leading" (i.e., dominant);

**TABLE 6.8:** List of *Biomass\_core* parameters and their description.

| paramName                         | paramClass           | default           | min      | max      | paramDesc                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------|----------|----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| calcSummaryBGM                    | character            | end               | NA       | NA       | A character vector describing when to calculate the summary of biomass, growth and mortality Currently any combination of 5 options is possible: 'start' - as before vegetation succession events, i.e. before dispersal, 'postDisp' - after dispersal, 'postRegen' - after post-disturbance regeneration (currently the same as 'start'), 'postGM' - after growth and mortality, 'postAging' - after aging, 'end' - at the end of vegetation succession events, before plotting and saving. The 'end' option is always active, being also the default option. If NULL, then will skip all summaryBGM related events |
| calibrate<br>cohortDefinitionCols | logical<br>character | FALSE<br>pixelGro | NA<br>NA | NA<br>NA | Do calibration? Defaults to FALSE cohortData columns that determine what constitutes a cohort This parameter should only be modified if additional modules are adding columns to cohortData                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

| 6            |  |
|--------------|--|
| LandR        |  |
| andR Biomass |  |
| core Mc      |  |
| Module       |  |

| paramName        | paramClass | default  | min | max | paramDesc                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|------------------|------------|----------|-----|-----|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cutpoint         | numeric    | 1e+10    | NA  | NA  | A numeric scalar indicating how large each chunk of an internal data.table is, when processing by chunks                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| initialB         | numeric    | 10       | 1   | NA  | initial biomass values of new age-1 cohorts. If NA or NULL, initial biomass will be calculated as in LANDIS-II Biomass Suc. Extension (see Scheller and Miranda, 2015 or ?LandR::.initiateNewCohorts)                                                                                                                                              |
| gmcsGrowthLimits | numeric    | 66.66666 | NA  | NA  | if using LandR.CS for climate-sensitive growth and mortality, a percentile is used to estimate the effect of climate on growth/mortality (currentClimate/referenceClimate). Upper and lower limits are suggested to circumvent problems caused by very small denominators as well as predictions outside the data range used to generate the model |

| paramName                 | paramClass | default  | min | max | paramDesc                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---------------------------|------------|----------|-----|-----|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| gmcsMortLimits            | numeric    | 66.66666 | NA  | NA  | if using LandR.CS for climate-sensitive growth and mortality, a percentile is used to estimate the effect of climate on growth/mortality (currentClimate/referenceClimate). Upper and lower limits are suggested to circumvent problems caused by very small denominators as well as predictions outside the data range used to generate the model |
| gmcsMinAge                | numeric    | 21       | 0   | NA  | if using LandR.CS for climate-sensitive growth and mortality, the minimum age for which to predict climate-sensitive growth and mortality. Young stands (< 30) are poorly represented by the PSP data used to parameterize the model.                                                                                                              |
| growthAndMortalityDrivers | character  | LandR    | NA  | NA  | package name where the following functions can be found: calculateClimateEffect, assignClimateEffect (see LandR.CS for climate sensitivity equivalent functions, or leave default if this is not desired)                                                                                                                                          |
| growthInitialTime         | numeric    | 0        | NA  | NA  | Initial time for the growth event to occur                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |

| 6         |  |
|-----------|--|
| LandR     |  |
| R Biomass |  |
| core A    |  |
| Module    |  |

| paramName            | paramClass | default    | min | max | paramDesc                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|----------------------|------------|------------|-----|-----|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| initialBiomassSource | character  | cohortData | NA  | NA  | Currently, there are three options:  'spinUp', 'cohortData', 'biomassMap'. If  'spinUp', it will derive biomass by running spinup derived from Landis-II. If  'cohortData', it will be taken from the cohortData object, i.e., it is already correct, by cohort. If 'biomassMap', it will be taken from sim\$biomassMap', it will be taken from sim\$biomassMap, divided across species using sim\$speciesLayers percent cover values 'spinUp' uses sim\$standAgeMap as the driver, so biomass is an output. That means it will be unlikely to match any input information about biomass, unless this is set to 'biomassMap', and a sim\$biomassMap is supplied. Only the 'cohortData' option is currently active. |
| keepClimateCols      | logical    | FALSE      | NA  | NA  | include growth and mortality predictions in cohortData?                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| minCohortBiomass     | numeric    | 0          | NA  | NA  | cohorts with biomass below this threshold (in $g/m^2$ ) are removed. Not a LANDIS-II BSE parameter.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

| paramName               | paramClass | default  | min | max | paramDesc                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-------------------------|------------|----------|-----|-----|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| mixedType               | numeric    | 2        | NA  | NA  | How to define mixed stands: 1 for any species admixture; 2 for deciduous > conifer. See ?LandR::vegTypeMapGenerator.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| plotOverstory           | logical    | FALSE    | NA  | NA  | swap max age plot with overstory biomass                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| seedingAlgorithm        | character  | wardDisp | NA  | NA  | choose which seeding algorithm will be used among 'noSeeding' (no horizontal, nor vertical seeding - not in LANDIS-II BSE), 'noDispersal' (no horizontal seeding), 'universalDispersal' (seeds disperse to any pixel), and 'wardDispersal' (default; seeds disperse according to distance and dispersal traits). See Scheller & Miranda (2015) - Biomass Succession extension, v3.2.1 User Guide |
| spinupMortalityfraction | numeric    | 0.001    | NA  | NA  | defines the mortality loss fraction in spin up-stage simulation. Only used if P(sim)\$initialBiomassSource == 'biomassMap', which is currently deactivated.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| sppEquivCol             | character  | Boreal   | NA  | NA  | The column in sim\$sppEquiv data.table to use as a naming convention                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |

| paramName            | paramClass | default | min | max | paramDesc                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|----------------------|------------|---------|-----|-----|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| successionTimestep   | numeric    | 10      | NA  | NA  | defines the simulation time step, default is 10 years. Note that growth and mortality always happen on a yearly basis. Cohorts younger than this age will not be included in competitive interactions                                             |
| vegLeadingProportion | numeric    | 0.8     | 0   | 1   | a number that defines whether a species is leading for a given pixel                                                                                                                                                                              |
| .maxMemory           | numeric    | 5       | NA  | NA  | maximum amount of memory (in GB) to use for dispersal calculations.                                                                                                                                                                               |
| .plotInitialTime     | numeric    | 0       | NA  | NA  | Vector of length = 1, describing the simulation time at which the first plot event should occur. To plotting off completely use P(sim)\$.plots.                                                                                                   |
| .plotInterval        | numeric    | NA      | NA  | NA  | defines the plotting time step. If NA, the default, .plotInterval is set to successionTimestep.                                                                                                                                                   |
| .plots               | character  | object  | NA  | NA  | Passed to types in Plots (see ?Plots). There are a few plots that are made within this module, if set. Note that plots (or their data) saving will ONLY occur at end (sim). If NA, plotting is turned off completely (this includes plot saving). |

| paramName        | paramClass | default | min | max | paramDesc                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|------------------|------------|---------|-----|-----|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| .plotMaps        | logical    | TRUE    | NA  | NA  | Controls whether maps should be plotted or not. Set to FALSE if P(sim)\$.plots == NA                                                                                                                                                                   |
| .saveInitialTime | numeric    | NA      | NA  | NA  | Vector of length = 1, describing the simulation time at which the first save event should occur. Set to NA if no saving is desired. If not NA, then saving will occur at P(sim)\$.saveInitialTime with a frequency equal to P(sim)\$.saveInterval      |
| .saveInterval    | numeric    | NA      | NA  | NA  | defines the saving time step. If NA, the default, .saveInterval is set to P(sim)\$successionTimestep.                                                                                                                                                  |
| .sslVerify       | integer    | 64      | NA  | NA  | Passed to httr::config(ssl_verifypeer = P(sim)\$.sslVerify) when downloading KNN (NFI) datasets. Set to OL if necessary to bypass checking the SSL certificate (this may be necessary when NFI's website SSL certificate is not correctly configured). |
| .studyAreaName   | character  | NA      | NA  | NA  | Human-readable name for the study area used. If NA, a hash of studyArea will be used.                                                                                                                                                                  |

| paramName    | paramClass | default  | min | max | paramDesc                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|--------------|------------|----------|-----|-----|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| .useCache    | character  | .inputOb | NA  | NA  | Internal. Can be names of events or the whole module name; these will be cached by SpaDES                                                                                                                                                 |
| .useParallel | ANY        | 2        | NA  | NA  | Used only in seed dispersal. If numeric, it will be passed to data.table::setDTthreads and should be <= 2; If TRUE, it will be passed to parallel::makeCluster; and if a cluster object, it will be passed to parallel::parClusterApplyB. |

145

# 6.2.5 List of outputs

The main outputs of *Biomass\_core* are the cohortData and pixelGroupMap containing cohort information per year (note that they are not saved by default), visual outputs of species level biomass, age and dominance across the landscape and the simulation length, and several maps of stand biomass, mortality and reproductive success (i.e, new biomass) on a yearly basis.

However, any of the objects changed/output by *Biomass\_core* (listed in Table 6.9) can be saved via the outputs argument in simInit<sup>25</sup>.

**TABLE 6.9:** List of *Biomass\_core* output objects and their description.

| objectName                | objectClass | desc                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| activePixelIndex          | integer     | internal use. Keeps track of which pixels are active.                                                                                                                                         |
| activePixelIndexReporting | integer     | internal use. Keeps track of<br>which pixels are active in the<br>reporting study area.                                                                                                       |
| ANPPMap                   | RasterLayer | ANPP map at each succession time step (in g /m^2)                                                                                                                                             |
| biomassMap                | RasterLayer | total biomass raster layer in study area (in $g/m^2$ ), filtered for pixels covered by cohortData. Only used if P(sim)\$initialBiomassSource == 'biomassMap', which is currently deactivated. |

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>25</sup>see ?SpaDES.core::outputs

| objectName                  | objectClass               | desc                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cohortData                  | data.table                | data.table with cohort-level information on age, biomass, aboveground primary productivity (year's biomass gain) and mortality (year's biomass loss), by pixelGroup and ecolocation (i.e., ecoregionGroup). Contains at least the following columns: pixelGroup (integer), ecoregionGroup (factor), speciesCode (factor), B (integer in $g/m^2$ ), age (integer in years), mortality (integer in $g/m^2$ ). May have other columns depending on additional simulated processes (i.e., cliamte sensitivity; see, e.g., P(sim)\$keepClimateCols). |
| ecoregion<br>ecoregionMap   | data.table<br>RasterLayer | ecoregion look up table map with mapcodes match ecoregion table and speciesEcoregion table. Defaults to a dummy map matching rasterToMatch with two regions.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| inactivePixelIndex          | logical                   | internal use. Keeps track of which pixels are inactive.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| inactivePixelIndexReporting | integer                   | internal use. Keeps track of which pixels are inactive in the reporting study area.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| lastFireYear                | numeric                   | Year of the most recent fire.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| lastReg                     | numeric                   | an internal counter keeping track of when the last regeneration event occurred.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| minRelativeB                | data.frame                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |

| objectName           | objectClass | desc                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|----------------------|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| mortalityMap         | RasterLayer | map of biomass lost (in $g/m^2$ ) at each succession time step.                                                                                                                      |
| pixelGroupMap        | RasterLayer | updated community map at each succession time step.                                                                                                                                  |
| regenerationOutput   | data.table  | If P(sim)\$calibrate == TRUE,<br>an summary of seed dispersal<br>and germination success (i.e.,<br>number of pixels where seeds<br>successfully germinated) per<br>species and year. |
| reproductionMap      | RasterLayer | Regeneration map (biomass gains in $g/m^2$ ) at each succession time step                                                                                                            |
| simulatedBiomassMap  | RasterLayer | Biomass map at each succession time step (in $g/m^2$ )                                                                                                                               |
| simulationOutput     | data.table  | contains simulation results by ecoregionGroup (main output)                                                                                                                          |
| simulationTreeOutput | data.table  | Summary of several characteristics about the stands, derived from cohortData                                                                                                         |
| species              | data.table  | a table that has species traits<br>such as longevity, shade<br>tolerance, etc. Currently<br>obtained from LANDIS-II<br>Biomass Succession v.6.0-2.0<br>inputs                        |
| speciesEcoregion     | data.table  | define the maxANPP, maxB and SEP change with both ecoregion and simulation time.                                                                                                     |
| speciesLayers        | RasterStack | species percent cover raster layers, based on input speciesLayers object. Not changed by this module.                                                                                |
| spinupOutput         | data.table  | Spin-up output. Currently deactivated.                                                                                                                                               |

| objectName                   | objectClass           | desc                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| sppColorVect                 | character             | A named vector of colors to use for plotting. The names must be in sim\$sppEquiv[[sim\$sppEquivCol] and should also contain a color for 'Mixed'.                                                                         |
| summaryBySpecies             | data.table            | The total species biomass (in $g/m^2$ as in cohortData), average age and aNPP (in $g/m^2$ as in cohortData), across the landscape (used for plotting and reporting).                                                     |
| summaryBySpecies1            | data.table            | Number of pixels of each leading vegetation type (used for plotting and reporting).                                                                                                                                      |
| summaryLandscape             | data.table            | The averages of total biomass (in tonnes/ha, not $g/m^2$ like in cohortData), age and aNPP (also in tonnes/ha) across the landscape (used for plotting and reporting).                                                   |
| treedFirePixelTableSinceLast | t <b>Distp</b> .table | 3 columns: pixelIndex,<br>pixelGroup, and burnTime. Each<br>row represents a forested pixel<br>that was burned up to and<br>including this year, since last<br>dispersal event, with its<br>corresponding pixelGroup and |
| vegTypeMap                   | RasterLayer           | time it occurred  Map of leading species in each pixel, colored according to sim\$sppColorVect. Species mixtures calculated according to P(sim)\$vegLeadingProportion and P(sim)\$mixedType.                             |

## 6.2.6 Simulation flow and module events

Biomass\_core itself does not simulate disturbances or their effect on vegetation (i.e., post-disturbance mortality and regeneration). Should disturbance and post-disturbance mortality/regeneration modules be used (e.g., LandMine and Biomass\_regeneration), the user should make sure that post-disturbance effects occur after the disturbance, but before dispersal and background vegetation growth and mortality (simulated in Biomass\_core). Hence, the disturbance itself should take place either at the very beginning or at the very end of each simulation time step to guarantee that it happens immediately before post-disturbance effects are calculated.

The general flow of *Biomass\_core* processes with and without disturbances is:

- Preparation of necessary objects for the simulation either by data and calibration modules or by *Biomass\_core* itself (during simInit and the init event<sup>26</sup>);
- 2. Disturbances (OPTIONAL) simulated by a disturbance module (e.g., *LandMine*);
- 3. Post-disturbance mortality/regeneration (OPTIONAL) simulated by a regeneration module (e.g., *Biomass\_regeneration*);
- 4. Seed dispersal (every successionTimestep; Dispersal event):
- seed dispersal can be a slow process and has been adapted to occur every 10 years (default successionTimestep). The user can set it to occur more/less often, with the caveat that if using Biomass\_borealDataPrep to estimate species establishment probabilities, these values are integrated over 10 years.
- see Scheller and Domingo [18] for details on dispersal algorithms.
  - 5. Growth and mortality (mortality And Growth event):
- unlike dispersal, growth and mortality always occur time step (year).
- see Scheller and Mladenoff [22] for further detail.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>26</sup>simInit is a SpaDES function that initialises the execution of one or more modules by parsing and checking their code and executing the .inputObjects function(s), where the developer provides mechanisms to satisfy each module's expected inputs with default values.

- Cohort age binning (every successionTimestep; cohortAgeReclassification event):
- follows the same frequency as dispersal, collapsing cohorts (i.e., summing their biomass/mortality/aNPP) to ages classes with resolution equal to successionTimestep.
- see Scheller and Miranda [20] for further detail.
  - 7. Summary tables of regeneration (summaryRegen event), biomass, age, growth and mortality (summaryBGM event);
  - Plots of maps (plotMaps event) and averages (plotAvgs and plot-SummaryBySpecies events);
  - 9. Save outputs (save event).

... (repeat 2-9) ...

# 6.2.7 Differences between Biomass\_core and the LANDIS-II Biomass Succession Extension model (LBSE)

# 6.2.7.1 Algorithm changes

Upon porting LBSE into R, we made six minor modifications to the original model's algorithms to better reflect ecological processes. This did not significantly alter the simulation outputs and we note that these changes might also have been implemented in more recent versions of LBSE.

First, for each year and community (i.e., 'pixel group' in *Biomass\_core*, see below), LBSE calculates the competition index for a cohort sequentially (i.e., one cohort at a time) after updating the growth and mortality of other cohorts (i.e., their biomass gain and loss, respectively), and with the calculation sequence following cohort age in descending order, but no explicit order of species. This sorting of growth and mortality calculations from oldest to youngest cohorts in LBSE was aimed at capturing size-asymmetric competition between cohorts, under the assumption that older cohorts have priority for growing space given their greater height (Scheller pers. comm.). We felt that within-year sequential growth, death and recruitment may be not ecologically accurate, and that the size-asymmetric competition was being accounted for twice, as the calculation of the competition index already considers the competitive advantage of older cohorts [as shown in the User's Guide,

20]. Hence, in *Biomass\_core* growth, mortality, recruitment and the competition index are calculated at the same time across all cohorts and species.

Second, the unknown species-level sorting mechanism contained within LBSE (which changed depending on the species order in the input species list file), led to different simulation results depending on the input species list file (e.g., Table 6.10 and Fig. 6.2). The calculation of competition, growth and mortality for all cohorts at the same time also circumvented this issue.

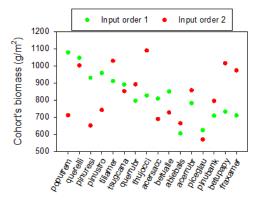


**FIGURE 6.2:** Differences in total landscape aboveground biomass when using two different input species orders for the same community. These simulations demonstrate how the sequential calculation of the competition index, combined with a lack of explicit species ordering affect the overall landscape aboveground biomass in time when using different input species orders (see Table

reftab:tableLBSEtest1). In order to prevent differences introduced by cohort recruitment, species' ages at sexual maturity were changed to the species' longevity values, and the simulation ran for 75 years to prevent any cohorts from reaching sexual maturity. The bottom panel shows the difference between the two simulations in percentage, calculated as  $\frac{Biomass_{order2} - Biomass_{order2}}{Biomass_{order2} + biomass_{order3}}$ , 100

 $\frac{Biomass_{order2} - Biomass_{order1}}{Biomass_{order2}} * 100$ 

Third, in LBSE the calculation of total pixel biomass for the purpose of calculating the initial biomass of a new cohort included the (previously calculated) biomass of other new cohorts when succession time step = 1, but not when time step was > 1. This does not reflect the documentation in the User's Guide, which stated that "Bsum [total pixel biomass] is the current total biomass for the site (not including other new cohorts)" [20, p. 4], when the succession time step was set to 1. Additionally, together with the lack of explicit ordering, this generated different results in terms of the biomass assigned to each new cohort (e.g., Table 6.12 and Fig. 6.3). In Biomass\_core the initial biomass of new cohorts is no longer calculated sequentially (as with competition, growth and mortality), and thus the biomass of new cohorts is never included in the calculation of total pixel biomass.



**FIGURE 6.3:** Differences in the biomass assigned to new cohorts, summed for each species across pixels, when using two different input species orders for the same community and when the succession time step is 1. These simulations demonstrate how the different summation of total cohort biomass for a succession time step of 1 and the lack of explicit species ordering affect simulation results when changing the species order in the input file (see Table

reftab:tableLBSEtest2). Here, initial cohort ages were also set to 1. Values refer to the initial total biomass attributed to each species at the end of year 1.

Fourth, in LBSE, serotiny and resprouting could not occur in the same pixel following a fire, with serotiny taking precedence if activated. We understand that this provides an advantage to serotinous species, which could perhaps

be disadvantaged with respect to fast-growing resprouters. However, we feel that it is ecologically more realistic that serotinous and resprouter species be able to both regenerate in a given pixel following a fire and allow the competition between serotinous and resprouting species to arise from species traits. Note that this change was implemented in the *Biomass\_regeneration* and *Biomass\_regenerationPM* modules, since post-disturbance effects were separated background vegetation dynamics simulated by *Biomass\_core*.

Fifth, in *Biomass\_core*, species shade tolerance values can have decimal values to allow for finer adjustments of between-species competition.

Sixth, we added a new parameter called minCohortBiomass, that allows the user to control cohort removal bellow a certain threshold of biomass. In some simulation set-ups, we noticed that <code>Biomass\_core</code> (and LBSE) were able to generate many very small cohorts in the understory that, due to cohort competition, were not able to gain biomass and grow. However, because competition decreases growth but does not increase mortality, these cohorts survived at very low biomass levels until they reached sufficient age to suffer age-related mortality. We felt this is unlikely to be realistic in many cases. By default, this parameter is left at 0 to follow LBSE behaviour (i.e., no cohorts removal based on minimum biomass).

## 6.2.7.2 Other enhancements

In addition to the sixth changes in growth, mortality and regeneration mentioned above, we enhanced modularity by separating the components that govern vegetation responses to disturbances from *Biomass\_core*, and implemented hashing, caching and testing to improve computational efficiency and insure performance.

#### 6.2.7.2.1 *Modularity*

Unlike in LBSE, post-disturbance effects are not part of *Biomass\_core* per se, but belong to two separate modules, used interchangeably (*Biomass\_regeneration*<sup>27</sup> and *Biomass\_regeneration*PM<sup>28</sup>). These need to be loaded and added to the "modules folder" of the project in case the user wants to simulate forest responses to disturbances (only fire disturbances at

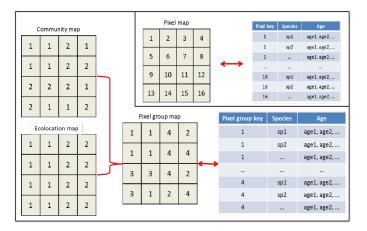
<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>27</sup>https://github.com/PredictiveEcology/Biomass\_regeneration/blob/master/Biomass\_regeneration.Rmd

the moment). Again, this enables higher flexibility when swapping between different approaches to regeneration.

Climate effects on growth and mortality were also implemented a modular way. The effects of climate on biomass increase (growth) and loss (mortality) were written in functions grouped in two packages. The LandR R package contains default, "non-climate-sensitive" functions, while the LandR.CS R package contains the functions that simulate climate effects (CS stands for "climate sensitive"). Note that these functions do not simulate actual growth/mortality processes, but estimate modifiers that increase/decrease cohort biomass on top of background growth/mortality. Biomass\_core uses the LandR functions by default (see growthAndMortalityDrivers parameter in the full parameters list). Should the user wish to change how climate effects on growth/mortality are calculated, they can provide new compatible functions (i.e., with the same names, inputs and outputs) via another R package.

## 6.2.7.2.2 Hashing

Our first strategy to improve simulation efficiency in *Biomass\_core* was to use a hashing mechanism [26]. Instead of assigning a key to each pixel in a raster and tracking the simulation for each pixel in a lookup table, we indexed pixels using a *pixelGroup* key that contained unique combinations of ecolocation and community composition (i.e., species, age and biomass composition), and tracked and stored simulation data for each *pixelGroup* (Fig. 6.4). This algorithm was able to ease the computational burden by significantly reducing the size of the lookup table and speeding-up the simulation process. After recruitment and disturbance events, pixels are rehashed into new pixel groups.



**FIGURE 6.4:** Hashing design for *Biomass\_core*. In the re-coded *Biomass\_core*, the pixel group map was hashed based on the unique combination of species composition ('community map') and ecolocation map, and associated with a lookup table. The insert in the top-right corner was the original design that linked the map to the lookup table by pixel key.

# 6.2.7.2.3 Caching

The second strategy aimed at improving model efficacy was the implementation of caching during data-driven parametrisation and initialisation. Caching automatically archives outputs of a given function to disk (or memory) and reads them back when subsequent calls of this function are given identical inputs. All caching operations were achieved using the reproducible R package [11].

In the current version of *Biomass\_core*, the spin-up phase was replaced by data-driven landscape initialisation and many model parameters were derived from data, using data and calibration modules (e.g., *Biomass\_borealDataPrep*). To avoid having to repeat data downloads and treatment, statistical estimation of parameters and landscape initialisation every time the simulation is re-run under the same conditions, many of these pre-simulation steps are automatically cached. This means that the pre-simulation phase is significantly faster upon a second call when inputs have not changed (e.g., the input data and parametrisation methods), and when inputs do change only directly affected steps are re-run (see main text for examples). When not using data modules, *Biomass\_core* still relies on caching for the preparation of its theoretical inputs.

#### 6.2.7.2.4 Testing

Finally, we implemented code testing to facilitate bug detection by comparing the outputs of functions (etc.) to expected outputs [24]. We built and integrated code tests in *Biomass\_core* and across all LandR modules and the LandR R package in the form of assertions, unit tests and integration tests. Assertions and unit tests are run automatically during simulations (but can be turned off) and evaluate individual code components (e.g., one function or an object's class). Integration tests evaluate if several coded processes are integrated correctly and are usually run manually. However, because we embedded assertions within the module code, R package dependencies of *Biomass\_core*, such as the LandR R package and Spades, they also provide a means to test module integration. We also implemented GitHub Actions continuous integration (CI), which routinely test GitHub hosted packages (e.g., LandR) and modules. CRAN-hosted packages (e.g., Spades) are also automatically tested and checked on CRAN.

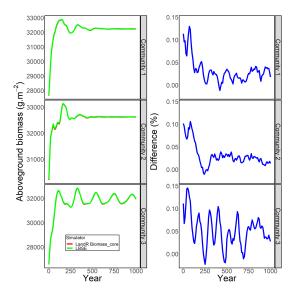
Finally, because *Biomass\_core* (and all other LandR modules) code is hosted in public GitHub repositories, the module code is subject to the scrutiny of many users, who can identify issues and contribute to improve module code.

## 6.2.7.3 Performance and accuracy of Biomass\_core with respect to LBSE

In the recoding of *Biomass\_core*, we used integration tests to ensured similar outputs of each demographic process (namely, growth, mortality and recruitment) to the outputs from its counterpart in LBSE. Here, we report the comparisons of the overall simulation (i.e., including all demographic processes) between LBSE and *Biomass\_core* using three randomly generated initial communities (Tables 6.14-6.16). The remaining input parameters were taken from a LANDIS-II training course (Tables 6.17-6.21), and contained species attributes information of 16 common tree species in boreal forests and 2 ecolocations. We ran simulations for 1000 years, with a succession time step of 10 and three replicates, which were enough to account for the variability produced by stochastic processes. Seed dispersal was set as "ward dispersal".

The results suggested that *Biomass\_core* had a good agreement with LBSE using the three randomly generated initial communities (Fig. 6.5), with very small deviations for LBSE-generated biomasses. Notably, the mean differences between LBSE and *Biomass\_core* were 0.03% (range: -0.01% ~ 0.13%),

0.03% (range:  $-0.01\% \sim 0.11\%$ ) and 0.05% ( $-0.02\% \sim 0.15\%$ ) for each initial community, respectively (right panels in Fig. 6.5 of this appendix).

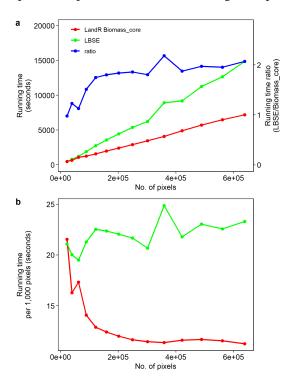


**FIGURE 6.5:** Visual comparison of simulation outputs for three randomly generated initial communities (left panels) and difference between those outputs (right panels). The % difference between LBSE and Biomass\_core were calculated as  $\frac{Biomass_{LBSE}-Biomass_{Biomass_{core}}}{Biomass_{LBSE}}*100$ 

To examine how running time changed with map size, we ran simulations using maps with increasing number of pixels, from 22,201 to 638,401 pixels. All maps were initialised with a single ecolocation and 7 different communities. Simulations were run for 120 years using a succession time step of 10 and replicated three times. To eliminate the effect of hardware on running time, we used machines that were all purchased at the same time, with equal specifications and running Windows 7. Each simulation ran on 2 CPU threads with a total RAM of 4000 Mb.

For both LBSE and *Biomass\_core*, the simulation time increased linearly with number of pixels, but the increase rate was smaller for *Biomass\_core* (Fig. 6.6a). This meant that while both models had similar simulation efficiencies in small maps (< 90,000 pixels), as map size increased *Biomass\_core* was ~2 times faster than LBSE (maps > 100,000 pixels; Fig. 6.6a). *Biomass\_core* also scaled better with map size, as LBSE speeds fluctuated between 19 to 25 sec-

onds per 1,000 pixels across all map sizes, while *Biomass\_core* decreased from 21 to 11 seconds per 1,000 pixels from smaller to larger maps (Fig. 6.6b).



**FIGURE 6.6:** Simulation efficiencies of LBSE and *Biomass\_core* with increasing map size, in terms of a) mean running time across repetitions (left y-axis) and the ratio LBSE to *Biomass\_core* running times (right y-axis and blue line), and b) running time scalability as the mean running time per 1000 pixels.

# 6.3 Usage example

# 6.3.1 Set up R libraries

```
options(repos = c(CRAN = "https://cloud.r-project.org"))
tempDir <- tempdir()</pre>
```

# 6.3.2 Get the module and module dependencies

We can use the SpaDES.project::getModule function to download the module to the module folder specified above. Alternatively, see SpaDES-modules repository<sup>29</sup> to see how to download this and other SpaDES modules, or fork/clone from its GitHub repository<sup>30</sup> directly.

After downloading the module, it is important to make sure all module R package dependencies are installed in their correct version. SpaDES.project::packagesInModules makes a list of necessary packages for all modules in the paths\$modulePath, and Require installs them.

```
Require(
|
"PredictiveEcology/SpaDES.project@6d7de6ee12fc967c7c60de44f1aa3b04e6eeb5db"
|
,
    require = FALSE, upgrade = FALSE, standAlone = TRUE)
```

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>29</sup>https://github.com/PredictiveEcology/SpaDES-modules

<sup>30</sup>https://github.com/PredictiveEcology/Biomass\_core/

```
paths <- list(inputPath = normPath(file.path(tempDir,</pre>
"inputs")),
    cachePath = normPath(file.path(tempDir, "cache")),
    modulePath = normPath(file.path(tempDir,
        "modules")), outputPath = normPath(file.path(tempDir,
        "outputs")))
SpaDES.project::getModule(modulePath = paths$modulePath,
c("PredictiveEcology/Biomass_core@master"),
    overwrite = TRUE)
## make sure all necessary packages are installed:
outs <- SpaDES.project::packagesInModules(modulePath =</pre>
paths$modulePath)
Require(c(unname(unlist(outs)), "SpaDES"), require = FALSE,
standAlone = TRUE)
## load necessary packages
Require(c("SpaDES", "LandR", "reproducible", "pemisc"), upgrade
= FALSE,
    install = FALSE)
```

# 6.3.3 Setup simulation

Here we setup a simulation in a random study area, using any species within the LandR::sppEquivalencies\_CA table that can be found there (Biomass\_core will retrieve species % cover maps and filter present species). We also define the colour coding used for plotting, the type of plots we what to produce and choose to output cohortData tables every year — note that these are not pixel-based, so to "spatialise" results a posteriori the pixel-BroupMap must also be saved.

Please see the lists of input objects, parameters and outputs for more information.

```
times <- list(start = 0, end = 30)
```

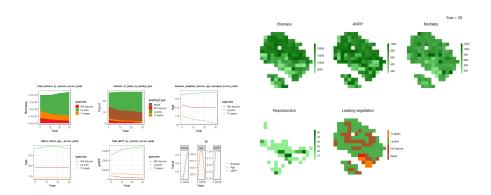
```
studyArea <- Cache(randomStudyArea, size = 1e+07) # cache this</pre>
so it creates a random one only once on a machine
# Pick the species you want to work with - using the naming
# convention in 'Boreal' column of
# LandR::sppEquivalencies CA
speciesNameConvention <- "Boreal"</pre>
speciesToUse <- c("Pice_Gla", "Popu_Tre", "Pinu_Con")</pre>
sppEquiv <- sppEquivalencies_CA[get(speciesNameConvention) %in%</pre>
    speciesToUse]
# Assign a colour convention for graphics for each species
sppColorVect <- sppColors(sppEquiv, speciesNameConvention,</pre>
newVals = "Mixed",
    palette = "Set1")
## Usage example
modules <- as.list("Biomass_core")</pre>
objects <- list(studyArea = studyArea, sppEquiv = sppEquiv,</pre>
sppColorVect = sppColorVect)
successionTimestep <- 10L</pre>
## keep default values for most parameters (omitted from
## this list)
parameters <- list(Biomass_core = list(sppEquivCol =</pre>
speciesNameConvention,
    successionTimestep = successionTimestep, .plots =
    c("screen",
        "object"), .plotInitialTime = times$start, .plots =
        c("screen",
        "png"), .saveInitialTime = times$start, .useCache =
        "init",
    .useParallel = FALSE))
outputs <- data.frame(expand.grid(objectName = "cohortData",</pre>
    saveTime = unique(seq(times$start, times$end, by = 1)),
    eventPriority = 1,
    stringsAsFactors = FALSE))
```

#### 6.3.4 Run simulation

simInitAndSpades is a wrapper function that runs both simInit (which initialises all modules) and spades (which runs all modules, i.e., their events), to which pass all the necessary setup objects created above.

Below, we pass some useful reproducible options that control caching ("reproducible.useCache") and where inputs should be downloaded to ("reproducible.destinationPath").

```
opts <- options(reproducible.useCache = TRUE,
reproducible.destinationPath = paths$inputPath,
    spades.useRequire = FALSE)
graphics.off()
mySim <- simInitAndSpades(times = times, params = parameters,
    modules = modules, objects = objects, paths = paths, outputs
    = outputs,
    debug = TRUE)</pre>
```



**FIGURE 6.7:** Biomass\_core automatically generates simulation visuals of species dynamics across the landscape in terms of total biomass, number of presences and age and productivity (above), as well as yearly plots of total biomass, productivity, mortality, reproduction and leading species in each pixel (below).

# 6.4 Appendix

# 6.4.1 Tables

**TABLE 6.10:** Input order and processing order (as determined by LBSE) for the same community used to assess the impact of  $\stackrel{\circ}{\div}$ sequential calculation of the competition index, combined with a lack of explicit species ordering. The input order was the order of species in the initial communities table input file. The processing order was the order used in the simulation, which was obtained from Landis-log.txt when CalibrateMode was set to 'yes'. Species starting ages are also shown. (continued below) below)

| Input order 1 |             |     |            | Input order 2 |  |
|---------------|-------------|-----|------------|---------------|--|
| Community     | Input order | Age | Processing | Community     |  |
| 1             | abiebals    | 20  | poputrem   | 1             |  |
| 1             | acerrubr    | 20  | querelli   | 1             |  |
| 1             | acersacc    | 20  | pinuresi   | 1             |  |
| 1             | betualle    | 20  | pinustro   | 1             |  |
| 1             | betupapy    | 20  | tiliamer   | 1             |  |
| 1             | fraxamer    | 20  | tsugcana   | 1             |  |
| 1             | piceglau    | 20  | querrubr   | 1             |  |
| 1             | pinubank    | 20  | thujocci   | 1             |  |
| 1             | pinuresi    | 20  | acersacc   | 1             |  |
| 1             | pinustro    | 20  | betualle   | 1             |  |
| 1             | poputrem    | 20  | abiebals   | 1             |  |
| 1             | querelli    | 20  | acerrubr   | 1             |  |
| 1             | querrubr    | 20  | piceglau   | 1             |  |
| 1             | thujocci    | 20  | pinubank   | 1             |  |
| 1             | tiliamer    | 20  | betupapy   | 1             |  |
| 1             | tsugcana    | 20  | fraxamer   | 1             |  |

| Input order | Age | Processing |
|-------------|-----|------------|
| pinustro    | 20  | thujocci   |
| poputrem    | 20  | tiliamer   |
| acerrubr    | 20  | querelli   |
| pinubank    | 20  | querrubr   |
| betualle    | 20  | betupapy   |
| piceglau    | 20  | fraxamer   |
| pinuresi    | 20  | tsugcana   |
| acersacc    | 20  | abiebals   |
| querelli    | 20  | acerrubr   |
| querrubr    | 20  | pinubank   |
| thujocci    | 20  | pinustro   |
| tiliamer    | 20  | poputrem   |
| tsugcana    | 20  | pinuresi   |
| abiebals    | 20  | acersacc   |
| betupapy    | 20  | betualle   |
| fraxamer    | 20  | piceglau   |

**TABLE 6.12:** Input order and processing order (as determined by LBSE) for the same community used to assess the impact  $\stackrel{\circ}{\div}$ of setting the succession time step to 1, combined with a lack of explicit species ordering. The input order was the order of species in the initial communities table input file. The processing order was the order used in the simulation, which was obtained from Landis-log.txt when CalibrateMode was set to 'yes'. Species starting ages are also shown. (continued below) below)

| Input order 1 |             |     |            | Input order 2 |  |
|---------------|-------------|-----|------------|---------------|--|
| Community     | Input order | Age | Processing | Community     |  |
| 1             | abiebals    | 1   | poputrem   | 1             |  |
| 1             | acerrubr    | 1   | querelli   | 1             |  |
| 1             | acersacc    | 1   | pinuresi   | 1             |  |
| 1             | betualle    | 1   | pinustro   | 1             |  |
| 1             | betupapy    | 1   | tiliamer   | 1             |  |
| 1             | fraxamer    | 1   | tsugcana   | 1             |  |
| 1             | piceglau    | 1   | querrubr   | 1             |  |
| 1             | pinubank    | 1   | thujocci   | 1             |  |
| 1             | pinuresi    | 1   | acersacc   | 1             |  |
| 1             | pinustro    | 1   | betualle   | 1             |  |
| 1             | poputrem    | 1   | abiebals   | 1             |  |
| 1             | querelli    | 1   | acerrubr   | 1             |  |
| 1             | querrubr    | 1   | piceglau   | 1             |  |
| 1             | thujocci    | 1   | pinubank   | 1             |  |
| 1             | tiliamer    | 1   | betupapy   | 1             |  |
| 1             | tsugcana    | 1   | fraxamer   | 1             |  |

| 9              |
|----------------|
| LandR          |
| ≀ Biomass      |
| core $\lambda$ |
| Module         |

6.4 Appendix 169

**TABLE 6.14:** Randomly generated community combination no. I used in the recruitment comparison runs.

| Communi | it§pecies | Age 1 | Age 2 | Age 3 | Age 4 | Age 5 | Age 6 | Age 7 |
|---------|-----------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 0       | betupapy  | 1     | 37    | 45    | 46    | 85    | NA    | NA    |
| 0       | piceglau  | 27    | 73    | 153   | 256   | 270   | NA    | NA    |
| 0       | pinustro  | 157   | 159   | 181   | 220   | 223   | 303   | 307   |
| 0       | querrubr  | 80    | 102   | 127   | 152   | 206   | 227   | NA    |
| 1       | acerrubr  | 3     | 91    | 126   | 145   | NA    | NA    | NA    |
| 1       | acersacc  | 138   | 144   | 276   | NA    | NA    | NA    | NA    |
| 1       | betualle  | 24    | 106   | 136   | 149   | 279   | NA    | NA    |
| 1       | piceglau  | 27    | 67    | 70    | 153   | NA    | NA    | NA    |
| 1       | pinubank  | 3     | 10    | 24    | 31    | 71    | NA    | NA    |
| 1       | querelli  | 92    | 224   | 234   | NA    | NA    | NA    | NA    |
| 1       | thujocci  | 73    | 146   | 262   | NA    | NA    | NA    | NA    |
| 2       | fraxamer  | 108   | 118   | 137   | 147   | 204   | NA    | NA    |
| 2       | piceglau  | 40    | 128   | 131   | 159   | 174   | NA    | NA    |
| 2       | pinustro  | 78    | 156   | 237   | 245   | 270   | NA    | NA    |
| 2       | querelli  | 67    | 97    | 186   | 292   | NA    | NA    | NA    |
| 2       | tiliamer  | 70    | 103   | 121   | 152   | 178   | 180   | 245   |
| 3       | acerrubr  | 5     | 83    | 125   | 126   | 127   | NA    | NA    |
| 3       | pinuresi  | 1     | 25    | 42    | 49    | 76    | 79    | 103   |
| 3       | poputrem  | 4     | 9     | 62    | NA    | NA    | NA    | NA    |
| 3       | querelli  | 101   | 104   | 167   | 226   | NA    | NA    | NA    |
| 3       | tsugcana  | 37    | 135   | 197   | 404   | 405   | NA    | NA    |
| 4       | acerrubr  | 15    | 29    | 63    | 70    | 105   | 133   | NA    |
| 4       | piceglau  | 67    | 132   | 189   | NA    | NA    | NA    | NA    |
| 4       | tsugcana  | 21    | 26    | 110   | 146   | 341   | 462   | 463   |
| 5       | acerrubr  | 128   | 137   | 145   | 147   | NA    | NA    | NA    |
| 5       | acersacc  | 241   | 245   | 261   | 277   | NA    | NA    | NA    |
| 5       | querrubr  | 23    | 72    | 120   | 142   | 188   | NA    | NA    |
| 5       | tiliamer  | 4     | 68    | 98    | 118   | 139   | 197   | NA    |
| 6       | betualle  | 5     | 23    | 31    | 249   | NA    | NA    | NA    |
| 6       | pinubank  | 67    | 70    | 89    | NA    | NA    | NA    | NA    |
| 6       | querelli  | 194   | 217   | 257   | NA    | NA    | NA    | NA    |

**TABLE 6.15:** Randomly generated community combination no. 2 used in the recruitment comparison runs.

| Commun | it§pecies | Age 1 | Age 2 | Age 3 | Age 4 | Age 5 | Age 6 | Age 7 |
|--------|-----------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 0      | acerrubr  | 22    | 26    | 30    | 40    | 47    | 145   | 146   |
| 0      | betualle  | 23    | 41    | 43    | 120   | 209   | 227   | 270   |
| 0      | fraxamer  | 25    | 90    | 119   | 173   | 185   | 282   | NA    |
| 0      | pinuresi  | 48    | 53    | 70    | 121   | 157   | NA    | NA    |
| 0      | pinustro  | 5     | 82    | 126   | 298   | 352   | NA    | NA    |
| 0      | querrubr  | 2     | 30    | 34    | 74    | 77    | 162   | 245   |
| 1      | acerrubr  | 2     | 39    | 43    | 84    | 116   | 127   | 143   |
| 1      | pinubank  | 34    | 57    | 75    | NA    | NA    | NA    | NA    |
| 1      | querelli  | 108   | 202   | 218   | 243   | NA    | NA    | NA    |
| 1      | querrubr  | 5     | 117   | 131   | 186   | 189   | 246   | NA    |
| 1      | tiliamer  | 10    | 19    | 46    | 80    | 133   | 148   | 231   |
| 1      | tsugcana  | 31    | 48    | 190   | 246   | 330   | NA    | NA    |
| 2      | pinubank  | 11    | 37    | 38    | 47    | 67    | 93    | NA    |
| 2      | querrubr  | 11    | 48    | 57    | 177   | 180   | 228   | 236   |
| 2      | tiliamer  | 28    | 42    | 78    | 79    | 223   | 250   | NA    |
| 2      | tsugcana  | 140   | 202   | 372   | 381   | 451   | NA    | NA    |
| 3      | acersacc  | 48    | 107   | 262   | 265   | NA    | NA    | NA    |
| 3      | betupapy  | 4     | 12    | 45    | 65    | 83    | 96    | NA    |
| 3      | poputrem  | 13    | 20    | 37    | 75    | 90    | NA    | NA    |
| 3      | querelli  | 72    | 90    | 104   | 115   | 116   | 265   | 278   |
| 3      | tiliamer  | 20    | 21    | 56    | 98    | 237   | NA    | NA    |
| 3      | tsugcana  | 86    | 224   | 425   | 429   | NA    | NA    | NA    |
| 4      | fraxamer  | 77    | 133   | 181   | NA    | NA    | NA    | NA    |
| 4      | pinustro  | 13    | 37    | 67    | 220   | 287   | 293   | 375   |
| 4      | querrubr  | 27    | 48    | 89    | 97    | NA    | NA    | NA    |
| 4      | thujocci  | 91    | 244   | 305   | 390   | NA    | NA    | NA    |
| 5      | abiebals  | 86    | 95    | 119   | 121   | 127   | 158   | NA    |
| 5      | betualle  | 83    | 113   | 136   | 161   | 216   | 231   | NA    |
| 5      | betupapy  | 10    | 38    | 64    | NA    | NA    | NA    | NA    |
| 5      | piceglau  | 16    | 63    | 70    | 102   | NA    | NA    | NA    |
| 6      | acerrubr  | 8     | 34    | 112   | NA    | NA    | NA    | NA    |
| 6      | betupapy  | 1     | 31    | 57    | 61    | 74    | 80    | 91    |
| 6      | fraxamer  | 63    | 100   | 108   | 140   | 196   | 294   | NA    |
| 6      | pinubank  | 15    | 19    | 44    | 47    | 51    | 80    | NA    |
| 6      | thujocci  | 78    | 146   | 163   | 213   | 214   | 228   | NA    |
|        |           |       |       |       |       |       |       |       |

6.4 Appendix 171

| Commun | it§pecies | Age 1 | Age 2 | Age 3 | Age 4 | Age 5 | Age 6 | Age 7 |
|--------|-----------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 6      | tsugcana  | 47    | 108   | 387   | 389   | 449   | NA    | NA    |

TABLE 6.16: Randomly generated community combination no. 3 used in the recruitment comparison runs.

Community Species Age 1 Age 2 Age 3 Age 4 Age 5 Age

| Community | Species  | Age 1 | Age 2 | Age 3 | Age 4 | Age 5 | Age 6 | Age 7 |
|-----------|----------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 0         | pinubank | 7     | 26    | 32    | 37    | 48    | 85    | 90    |
| 0         | pinuresi | 11    | 103   | 109   | 179   | 188   | 197   | NA    |
| 0         | querrubr | 89    | 139   | 180   | 206   | NA    | NA    | NA    |
| 1         | betupapy | 36    | 39    | 45    | 49    | 66    | 68    | NA    |
| 1         | piceglau | 13    | 165   | 254   | NA    | NA    | NA    | NA    |
| 1         | pinubank | 3     | 19    | 54    | 64    | 76    | NA    | NA    |
| 1         | poputrem | 22    | 59    | 93    | NA    | NA    | NA    | NA    |
| 1         | thujocci | 68    | 98    | 274   | 275   | 363   | 378   | NA    |
| 1         | tiliamer | 13    | 20    | 105   | 124   | 248   | NA    | NA    |
| 1         | tsugcana | 36    | 90    | 142   | NA    | NA    | NA    | NA    |
| 2         | fraxamer | 11    | 241   | 279   | NA    | NA    | NA    | NA    |
| 2         | piceglau | 16    | 42    | 129   | 177   | 200   | 244   | NA    |
| 2         | pinustro | 200   | 342   | 384   | NA    | NA    | NA    | NA    |
| 3         | abiebals | 31    | 57    | 61    | 92    | 108   | 162   | 183   |
| 3         | piceglau | 126   | 255   | 261   | 267   | NA    | NA    | NA    |
| 3         | poputrem | 28    | 41    | 57    | NA    | NA    | NA    | NA    |
| 3         | querrubr | 83    | 91    | 144   | 173   | 184   | 238   | NA    |
| 3         | thujocci | 6     | 66    | 68    | 204   | NA    | NA    | NA    |
| 4         | fraxamer | 12    | 110   | 266   | 270   | NA    | NA    | NA    |
| 4         | pinustro | 174   | 270   | 359   | 379   | NA    | NA    | NA    |
| 4         | poputrem | 4     | 7     | 18    | 24    | 63    | 76    | NA    |

| Community | Species  | Age 1 | Age 2 | Age 3 | Age 4 | Age 5 | Age 6 | Age 7 |
|-----------|----------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 4         | tiliamer | 126   | 136   | 197   | NA    | NA    | NA    | NA    |
| 4         | tsugcana | 49    | 91    | 128   | 194   | 411   | 487   | NA    |
| 5         | abiebals | 35    | 53    | 108   | 114   | 147   | 174   | 195   |
| 5         | acerrubr | 1     | 2     | 101   | 145   | NA    | NA    | NA    |
| 5         | pinubank | 14    | 15    | 38    | 40    | 59    | 69    | 83    |
| 6         | acerrubr | 4     | 46    | 117   | NA    | NA    | NA    | NA    |
| 6         | betualle | 36    | 41    | 116   | 213   | 253   | NA    | NA    |
| 6         | betupapy | 4     | 6     | 76    | NA    | NA    | NA    | NA    |
| 6         | pinuresi | 43    | 68    | 85    | 171   | NA    | NA    | NA    |
| 6         | querrubr | 84    | 86    | 113   | 185   | 193   | 223   | 228   |
| 6         | tiliamer | 13    | 106   | 181   | 199   | 246   | NA    | NA    |

**TABLE 6.17:** Invariant species traits table used in comparison runs. (continued below)

| Species  | Longevity | Sexualmature | Shadetolerance | Seeddistance_eff |
|----------|-----------|--------------|----------------|------------------|
| abiebals | 200       | 25           | 5              | 30               |
| acerrubr | 150       | 10           | 4              | 100              |
| acersacc | 300       | 40           | 5              | 100              |
| betualle | 300       | 40           | 4              | 100              |
| betupapy | 100       | 30           | 2              | 200              |
| fraxamer | 300       | 30           | 4              | 70               |
| piceglau | 300       | 25           | 3              | 30               |
| pinubank | 100       | 15           | 1              | 20               |
| pinuresi | 200       | 35           | 2              | 20               |
| pinustro | 400       | 40           | 3              | 60               |
| poputrem | 100       | 20           | 1              | 1000             |
| querelli | 300       | 35           | 2              | 30               |
| querrubr | 250       | 25           | 3              | 30               |
| thujocci | 400       | 30           | 2              | 45               |
| tiliamer | 250       | 30           | 4              | 30               |
| tsugcana | 500       | 30           | 5              | 30               |

| Seeddistance_max | Mortalityshape | Growthcurve |
|------------------|----------------|-------------|
| 160              | 10             | 0.25        |
| 200              | 10             | 0.25        |
| 200              | 10             | 0.25        |
| 400              | 10             | 0.25        |
| 5000             | 10             | 0.25        |
| 140              | 10             | 0.25        |
| 200              | 10             | 0.25        |
| 100              | 10             | 0.25        |
| 275              | 10             | 0.25        |
| 210              | 10             | 0.25        |
| 5000             | 10             | 0.25        |
| 3000             | 10             | 0.25        |
| 3000             | 10             | 0.25        |
| 60               | 10             | 0.25        |
| 120              | 10             | 0.25        |
| 100              | 10             | 0.25        |

175

| Seeddistance_max | Mortalityshape | Growthcurve |
|------------------|----------------|-------------|
|                  |                |             |

**TABLE 6.19:** Minimum relative biomass table used in comparison runs. X0-5 represent site shade classes from no-shade (0) to maximum shade (5). All ecolocations shared the same values.

| Ecolocation | XO | X1   | X2   | X3  | X4  | X5   |
|-------------|----|------|------|-----|-----|------|
| All         | 0  | 0.15 | 0.25 | 0.5 | 0.8 | 0.95 |

**TABLE 6.20:** Probability of germination for species shade tolerance and shade level combinations (called *sufficient light* table in LBSE and sufficientLight input data.table in LandR *Biomass\_core*) used in comparison runs.

| Shadetolerance | 0 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
|----------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1              | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 2              | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 3              | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 4              | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| 5              | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| 5              | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | ] |

**TABLE 6.21:** Species ecolocation table used in comparison runs. SEP stands for species establishment probability, maxB for maximum biomass and max-ANPP for maximum aboveground net primary productivity. Values were held constant throughout the simulation.

| Ecolocation | Species  | SEP  | maxANPP | maxB  |
|-------------|----------|------|---------|-------|
| 1           | abiebals | 0.9  | 886     | 26580 |
| 1           | acerrubr | 1    | 1175    | 35250 |
| 1           | acersacc | 0.82 | 1106    | 33180 |
| 1           | betualle | 0.64 | 1202    | 36060 |
| 1           | betupapy | 1    | 1202    | 36060 |
| 1           | fraxamer | 0.18 | 1202    | 36060 |
| 1           | piceglau | 0.58 | 969     | 29070 |
| 1           | pinubank | 1    | 1130    | 33900 |

| Ecolocation | Species  | SEP  | maxANPP | maxB  |
|-------------|----------|------|---------|-------|
| 1           | pinuresi | 0.56 | 1017    | 30510 |
| 1           | pinustro | 0.72 | 1090    | 38150 |
| 1           | poputrem | 1    | 1078    | 32340 |
| 1           | querelli | 0.96 | 1096    | 32880 |
| 1           | querrubr | 0.66 | 1017    | 30510 |
| 1           | thujocci | 0.76 | 1090    | 32700 |
| 1           | tiliamer | 0.54 | 1078    | 32340 |
| 1           | tsugcana | 0.22 | 1096    | 32880 |

# 6.5 References

- [7] P J Burton and S G Cumming. "Potential effects of climatic change on some western Canadian forests, based on phenological enhancements to a patch model of forest succession". In: *Water, Air and Soil Pollution* 82 (1995), pp. 401–414.
- [8] Alex M. Chubaty and Eliot J. B. McIntire. SpaDES: Develop and Run Spatially Explicit Discrete Event Simulation Models. 2019. URL: https://CRAN.R-project.org/package=SpaDES.
- [11] Eliot J. B. McIntire and Alex M. Chubaty. reproducible: A Set of Tools that Enhance Reproducibility Beyond Package Management. 2020. URL: https://reproducible.predictiveecology.org,%20https://github.com/PredictiveEcology/reproducible.
- [18] Robert M. Scheller and James B. Domingo. LANDIS-II Model v6.0 Conceptual Description. Apr. 20, 2012.
- [19] Robert M. Scheller and James B. Domingo. LANDIS-II Model v6.0 User Guide. July 19, 2011.
- [20] Robert M. Scheller and Brian R. Miranda. LANDIS-II Biomass Succession v3.2 Extension User Guide. 2015.
- [22] Robert M. Scheller and David J. Mladenoff. "A forest growth and biomass module for a landscape simulation model, LANDIS: design, validation, and application". In: *Ecological Modelling* 180.1 (Dec. 2004),

6.5 References 177

- pp. 211–229. DOI: 10.1016/j.ecolmodel.2004.01.022<sup>31</sup>. URL: https://linkinghub.elsevier.com/retrieve/pii/S0304380004003837.
- [23] Brian R. Sturtevant et al. LANDIS-II Dynamic Fire System Extension v3.0 User Guide. 2018.
- [24] Hadley Wickham. "testthat: Get Started with Testing". In: *The R Journal* 3.1 (2011), p. 5. DOI: 10.32614/RJ-2011-002<sup>32</sup>. URL: https://journal.r-project.org/archive/2011/RJ-2011-002/index.html.
- Jian Yang et al. "An innovative computer design for modeling forest landscape change in very large spatial extents with fine resolutions". In: *Ecological Modelling* 222.15 (Aug. 10, 2011), pp. 2623–2630. DOI: 10. 1016/j.ecolmodel.2011.04.032<sup>33</sup>. URL: https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0304380011002651.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>31</sup>https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ecolmodel.2004.01.022

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>32</sup>https://doi.org/10.32614/RJ-2011-002

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>33</sup>https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ecolmodel.2011.04.032

# LandR Biomass\_regeneration Module

This documentation is work in progress. Please report any discrepancies or omissions at https://github.com/PredictiveEcology/Biomass\_regeneration/issues.

#### 7.0.0.1 Authors:

Eliot J B McIntire eliot.mcintire@nrcan-rncan.gc.ca<sup>1</sup> [aut, cre], Yong Luo yluo1@lakeheadu.ca<sup>2</sup> [aut], Ceres Barros cbarros@mail.ubc.ca<sup>3</sup> [aut], Alex M. Chubaty achubaty@for-cast.ca<sup>4</sup> [ctb]

# 7.1 Module Overview

# 7.1.1 Module summary

Biomass\_regeneration is a SpaDES module that simulates post-disturbance regeneration mechanisms for Biomass\_core. As such, this module is mostly based on the post-disturbance regeneration mechanisms present in LANDIS-II Biomass Succession v3.2.1 extension (see LANDIS-II Biomass Succession v3.2 User Guide<sup>5</sup> and Scheller and Mladenoff (2004)<sup>6</sup>. At the moment, the Biomass\_regeneration module only simulates post-fire disturbance effects on forest species, by simulating post-fire mortality and activating serotiny or resprouting mechanisms for each species, depending

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>mailto:eliot.mcintire@nrcan-rncan.gc.ca

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup>mailto:yluo1@lakeheadu.ca

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup>mailto:cbarros@mail.ubc.ca

<sup>4</sup>mailto:achubaty@for-cast.ca

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>5</sup>https://github.com/LANDIS-II-Foundation/Extension-Biomass-Succession/blob/master/docs/LANDIS-II%20Biomass%20Succession%20v3.2%20User%20Guide.docx 
<sup>6</sup>https://pdfs.semanticscholar.org/4d38/d0be6b292eccd444af399775d37a757d1967.pdf

on their traits (i.e. ability to resprout and/or germinate from seeds, serotiny, following fire). Post-fire mortality behaves in a stand-replacing fashion, i.e. should a pixel be within a fire perimeter (determined by a fire raster) all cohorts see their biomasses set to 0.

As for post-fire regeneration, the module first evaluates whether any species present prior to fire are serotinous. If so, these species will germinate depending on light conditions and their shade tolerance, and depending on their (seed) establishment probability (i.e. germination success) in that pixel. The module then evaluates if any species present before fire are capable of resprouting. If so the model growth these species depending, again, on light conditions and their shade tolerance, and on their resprouting probability (i.e. resprouting success). For any given species in any given pixel, only serotiny or resprouting can occur. Hence, species that are capable of both will only resprout if serotiny was not activated.

In LANDIS-II, resprouting could never occur in a given pixel if serotiny was activated for one or more species. According to the manual:

If serotiny (only possible immediately following a fire) is triggered for one or more species, then neither resprouting nor seeding will occur. Serotiny is given precedence over resprouting as it typically has a higher threshold for success than resprouting. This slightly favors serotinous species when mixed with species able to resprout following a fire.

# (LANDIS-II Biomass Succession v3.2 User Guide<sup>7</sup>)

This is no longer the case in Biomass\_regeneration, where both serotinity and resprouting can occur in the same pixel, although not for the same species. We feel that this is more realistic ecologically, as resprouters will typically regenerate faster after a fire, often shading serotinous species and creating interesting successional feedbacks (e.g. light-loving serotinous species having to "wait" for canopy gaps to germinate).

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>7</sup>https://github.com/LANDIS-II-Foundation/Extension-Biomass-Succession/blob/master/docs/LANDIS-II%20Biomass%20Succession%20v3.2%20User%20Guide.docx

7.1 Module Overview 181

**TABLE 7.1:** List of *Biomass\_regeneration* input objects and their description.

| edipoliticase     | object.lass | čni                                                                                                | servicia:                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-------------------|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| color@sta         | data table  | age subset biomass table hasiled to pixel group map by 'pixel/troupleden' at consession time step  | NA NA                                                                                                                                                                          |
| inactiveFixeCodes | legical     | internal use. Eveps track of which pixels are inactive                                             | NA NA                                                                                                                                                                          |
| piselDoupStap     | KasheLaper  | apolitical community map at each concession time step                                              | NA NA                                                                                                                                                                          |
| radir/Schlabile   | KesinsLayer | a nation of the https://doi.or.                                                                    | NA .                                                                                                                                                                           |
| roll armedians    | Resimbayer  | Einary ration of Eres, I meaning Surred. Core St.A is non-borned.                                  | SA.                                                                                                                                                                            |
| species           | (Edia (400) | a UMB that has operior trusts each as Imagenty                                                     | https://www.githabasencontent.orm/LACES-D Foundation/Extreminal Surveyance Surveyance accuration-archive/trans/Sections/College/Section 1st                                    |
| speciedizangion   | data table  | table defining the matANPP, matR and SEP, which can change with both exception and simulation time | https://www.githubasescontent.com/LANTO-D frondation/Extractions fluorestim/moster/fromass convention archite/treak/texts/to.D 1.0/fromass convention-dynamic-inputs; text.tot |
| sufficientLight   | data frome  | table defining how the species with different shade telesance respond to stand shadiness.          | https://www.githubasescontent.com/LANTO-D fromdation/Extractions fluorestion/master from an excurration archite/treak/texts/to.D 1.0/biomass excursion and tot                 |
|                   |             |                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                |

**TABLE 7.2:** List of Biomass\_regeneration parameters and their description.

| paramName            | paramClass | default  | min |    | paramDesc                                                                                                                                                                                                  |  |  |
|----------------------|------------|----------|-----|----|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|
| calibrate            | logical    | FALSE    | NA  | NA | Do calibration? Defaults to FALSE                                                                                                                                                                          |  |  |
| cohortDefinitionCols | character  | pixelGro | NA  | NA | columns in cohortData that determine unique cohorts                                                                                                                                                        |  |  |
| fireInitialTime      | numeric    | 1        | NA  | NA | The event time that the first fire disturbance event occurs                                                                                                                                                |  |  |
| fireTimestep         | numeric    | 1        | NA  | NA | he number of time units between successive fire events in a fire module                                                                                                                                    |  |  |
| initialB             | numeric    | 10       | 1   |    | initial biomass values of new age-1 cohorts. If 'NA' or 'NULL', initial biomass will be calculated as in LANDIS-II Biomass Suc. Extension (see Scheller and Miranda, 2015 or 'PlandR::initiateNewCohorts') |  |  |
| successionTimestep   | numeric    | 10       | NA  |    | defines the simulation time step, default is 10 years                                                                                                                                                      |  |  |
| .plots               | character  | screen   | NA  | NA | Used by Plots function, which can be optionally used here                                                                                                                                                  |  |  |
| .plotInitialTime     | numeric    | 0        | NA  | NA | this describes the simulation time at which the first plot event should occur                                                                                                                              |  |  |
| .plotInterval        | numeric    | NA       | NA  | NA | This describes the simulation time interval between plot events                                                                                                                                            |  |  |
| .saveInitialTime     | numeric    | NA       | NA  | NA | This describes the simulation time at which the first save event should occur                                                                                                                              |  |  |
| .saveInterval        | numeric    | NA       | NA  | NA | This describes the simulation time interval between save events                                                                                                                                            |  |  |
| .useCache            | character  | .inputOb | NA  | NA | Should this entire module be run with caching activated? This is generally intended for data-type modules, where stochasticity and time are not relevant                                                   |  |  |

# 7.1.2 General flow of Biomass\_regeneration processes - fire disturbances only

- 1. Removal of biomass in disturbed, i.e. burnt, pixels
- 2. Activation of serotiny for serotinous species present before the fire
- 3. Activation of resprouting for resprouter species present before the fire and for which serotiny was not activated
- 4. Establishment/growth of species for which serotiny or resprouting were activated

### 7.1.3 Module inputs and parameters

Table 7.1 shows the full list of module inputs.

Summary of user-visible parameters (Table 7.2):

### 7.1.4 Module outputs

Description of the module outputs (Table 7.3).

**TABLE 7.3:** List of *Biomass\_regeneration* outputs and their description.

|                                  | objectClass | desc                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|----------------------------------|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cohortData                       | data.table  | age cohort-biomass table hooked to pixel group map by pixelGroupIndex at succession time step                                                                                                                           |
| lastFireYear                     | numeric     | Year of the most recent fire year                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| pixelGroupMap                    | RasterLayer | updated community map at each succession time step                                                                                                                                                                      |
| serotinyResproutSuccessPixels    | numeric     | Pixels that were successfully regenerated via serotiny or resprouting. This is a subset of treedBurnLoci                                                                                                                |
| postFireRegenSummary             | data.table  | summary table of species post-fire regeneration                                                                                                                                                                         |
| severityBMap                     |             | A map of fire severity, as in the amount of post-fire mortality (biomass loss)                                                                                                                                          |
| severityData                     |             | A data. table of pixel fire severity, as in the amount of post-fire mortality (biomass loss). May also have severity class used to calculate mortality.                                                                 |
| treedFirePixelTableSinceLastDisp | data.table  | 3 columns: pixelIndex, pixelGroup, and burnTime. Each row represents a forested pixel that was burned up to and including this year, since last dispersal event, with its corresponding pixelGroup and time it occurred |

# 7.1.5 Links to other modules

Primarily used with the LandR Biomass suite of modules, namely Biomass\_core<sup>8</sup>.

# 7.2 Getting help

• https://gitter.im/PredictiveEcology/LandR\_Biomass ## References

 $<sup>^8</sup>https://github.com/Predictive {\hbox{\it Ecology/Biomass\_core}}$ 

# Wildfire submodel

Lorem ipsum ... (TODO)

This documentation is work in progress. Please report any discrepancies or omissions at https://github.com/PredictiveEcology/LandMine/issues.

#### 8.0.0.1 Authors:

Eliot J B McIntire eliot.mcintire@nrcan-rncan.gc.ca<sup>1</sup> [aut], Alex M. Chubaty achubaty@for-cast.ca<sup>2</sup> [ctb, cre]

### 8.1 Module Overview

#### 8.1.1 Module summary

Landmine is a model created for simulating the natural range of variation for landscapes in the boreal forest [1, 2]. It has been widely used by the public and the private sector for various purposes. This SpaDES module is a rewrite of the fire component in native R.

#### 8.1.2 Model Differences

The current version has not yet been fully tested and compared with the original version, but there are currently several known differences:

- 1. Fire sizes are taken from a Truncated Pareto distribution, resulting in numerous very small fires, and few large fires;
- 2. Parameters have been fitted to the landscapes that are under study in the LandWeb project.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>mailto:eliot.mcintire@nrcan-rncan.gc.ca

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup>mailto:achubaty@for-cast.ca

**TABLE 8.1:** LandMine species codes.

|                          | Γ_                      |          |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|----------|
| Species                  | Group                   | Code     |
| Jack pine                | Pine (PINU)             | Pinu_ban |
| Lodgepole pine           | Pine (PINU)             | Pinu_con |
| Unspecified pine species | Pine (PINU)             | Pinu_sp  |
| Paper birch              | Deciduous (DECI)        | Betu_pap |
| Balsam poplar            | Deciduous (DECI)        | Popu_bal |
| Trembling aspen          | Deciduous (DECI)        | Popu_tre |
| Larch/Tamarack           | Deciduous (DECI)        | Lari_lar |
| Black spruce             | Black spruce (PICE_MAR) | Pice_mar |
| White spruce             | White spruce (PICE_GLA) | Pice_gla |
| Fir species              | Fir (ABIE)              | Abie_sp  |

# 8.1.3 Known Species

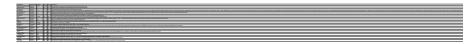
Landmine requires the following codes as inputs (the genus and species codes below), which converts and groups species as follows. Each of the species groups has its own Rate of Spread (ROS) for fire spreading:

8.1 Module Overview 187

**TABLE 8.2:** List of *LandMine* input objects and their description.

| objectName         | objectClass              | desc.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | eourceUEL |
|--------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| cobombuta          | dira rable               | Columno B, pineliforoup, species/Code (se a factor of the names), age, indicating several finances about the current vegetation of exand.                                                                                                                                                                                                 | NA        |
|                    | kaner                    | A ranter layer that is a factor ranter, with at least 1 column called 'firelessman's representing the fire return interval in years.                                                                                                                                                                                                      | NA        |
|                    | Kamerlager               | Prode with Identical values share Identical and Researce                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | NA        |
|                    | Kamerlager               | a ranter of the 'studyshest' to use as a template matter (resolution, projection, etc.) for all other matters in the simulation.                                                                                                                                                                                                          | NA        |
|                    | dira rable               | Adata.table with 1 columns, Jup', Seading', and 'too'. The values under the 'age' column can be 'manue', 'joung' and compound versions of these, e.g., 'immature', young' which can be used when 2 or more age classes share same 'too'. Seading' should be regetation type. 'too' gives the rare of spread values for each age and type. | NA        |
|                    | kaner                    | Arzener layer, with 0, 1 and NA, where 1 indicates a seas that are flammable, 0 not flammable (e.g., lakes) and NA not applicable (e.g., masked)                                                                                                                                                                                          | NA        |
|                    |                          | actions discording states Tayyor                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | NA        |
|                    | data table               | Columno specios, speciosCode, Indicaring several frazanos about specios                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | NA        |
| sppColorVect       | character                | named character rector of hot colour codes corresponding to each species.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | NA        |
| sppEquiv           | dira rable               | Malti-columned data rable indicating species name equivalencies. Default taken from 'Landik-eppliquivalencies, CN which has names for species of trees in Canada                                                                                                                                                                          | NA        |
| studyknea          | SpatialPolygonsDataFramo | multipolygon, cypically buffered are area of interest (i.e., 'studyshealleporting') to use for distulation. Defaults to an area in Southerstern Alberta, Canada.                                                                                                                                                                          | NA        |
| studykniakeporting | SpatialPolygonsDataFramo | multipolygon (typically emaller (unbuffered than 'studydeus') to use for plotting/seporting. Defaults to an assa in Southwestern Alberta, Canada.                                                                                                                                                                                         | NA        |

**TABLE 8.3:** List of *LandMine* parameters and their description.



# 8.1.4 Module inputs and parameters

Table 8.2 shows the full list of module inputs.

Summary of user-visible parameters (Table 8.3).

# 8.1.5 Module outputs

Description of the module outputs (Table 8.4).

**TABLE 8.4:** List of *LandMine* outputs and their description.

| objectName                          | objectClass |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-------------------------------------|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| fireInitialTime                     | numeric     | The initial event time of the burn event. This is simply a reassignment from 'P(sim)#burnInitialTime'.                                                                                                                                                     |
| fireSizes                           |             | A list of data.tables, one per burn event, each with two columns, 'size' and 'maxSize'. These indicate the actual sizes and expected sizes burned, respectively. These can be put into a single data.table with 'rbindlist(simsfireSizes, ideal = 'year')' |
| fireReturnInterval                  |             | A Raster' map showing the fire return interval. This is created from the 'rstCurrentBurn'.                                                                                                                                                                 |
| fireReturnIntervalsByPolygonNumeric |             | A vector of the fire return intervals, ordered by the numeric representation of polygon ID                                                                                                                                                                 |
| fireTimestep                        |             | The number of time units between successive fire events in a fire module.                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| friSummary                          | data.table  | summary fire return interval table                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| kBest                               |             | A numeric scalar that is the optimal value of 'K' in the Truncated Pareto distribution ('rtruncpareto')                                                                                                                                                    |
| numFiresPerYear                     |             | The average number of fires per year, by fire return interval level on 'rstCurrentBurn'.                                                                                                                                                                   |
| rstCurrentBurn                      | RasterLayer | A raster layer, produced at each timestep, where each pixel is either I or O indicating burned or not burned.                                                                                                                                              |
| rstCurrentBurnCumulative            | RasterLayer | Cumulative number of times a pixel has burned                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| sppEquiv                            | data.table  | Same as input, but with new column, 'LandMine'.                                                                                                                                                                                                            |

## 8.2 Usage

To run this Landmine module alone (i.e., for fitting), the following should work (iff raster inputs for studyArea and rasterToMatch are available), assuming all R packages are available.

**NB:** Paths will have be changed for a different user.

# 8.2.1 Package dependencies

To determine which packages are used by LandMine, use:

```
SpaDES.core::packages(modules = "LandMine", paths = "..")[[1]]
```

```
[1] "SpaDES.core"
##
   [2] "assertthat"
   [3] "data.table"
   [4] "fasterize"
   [5] "fpCompare"
   [6] "ggplot2"
   [7] "ggspatial"
   [8] "grDevices"
   [9] "gridExtra"
##
## [10] "magrittr"
## [11] "PredictiveEcology/LandR@development (>= 1.1.0.9003)"
## [12] "PredictiveEcology/LandWebUtils@development (>= 1.0.2)"
## [13] "PredictiveEcology/pemisc@development"
## [14] "PredictiveEcology/SpaDES.tools@development"
## [15] "quickPlot"
## [16] "raster"
## [17] "RColorBrewer"
## [18] "stats"
## [19] "VGAM"
```

8.2 Usage 189

### 8.2.2 Module usage

First, define a study area and create a template raster.

```
studyArea <- SpaDES.tools::randomStudyArea(seed = 1234, size =
1e+10)
rasterToMatch <- raster(studyArea, res = 250)</pre>
```

Next, set up the simulation to run for 13 timesteps using default module parameters.

```
times <- list(start = 0, end = 13)</pre>
parameters <- list(# LandMine = list(flushCachedRandomFRI =</pre>
TRUE) ) parameters
parameters <- list(# LandMine = list(flushCachedRandomFRI =</pre>
TRUE) ) <-
parameters <- list(# LandMine = list(flushCachedRandomFRI =</pre>
TRUE) ) list(#
parameters <- list(# LandMine = list(flushCachedRandomFRI =</pre>
TRUE) ) LandMine
parameters <- list(# LandMine = list(flushCachedRandomFRI =</pre>
TRUE) ) =
parameters <- list(# LandMine = list(flushCachedRandomFRI =</pre>
TRUE) ) list(flushCachedRandomFRI
parameters <- list(# LandMine = list(flushCachedRandomFRI =</pre>
TRUE) ) =
parameters <- list(# LandMine = list(flushCachedRandomFRI =</pre>
TRUE) ) TRUE)
parameters <- list(# LandMine = list(flushCachedRandomFRI =</pre>
TRUE) ) )
modules <- list("LandMine")</pre>
objects <- list(studyArea = studyArea, rasterToMatch =</pre>
rasterToMatch)
```

```
paths <- list(cachePath = cacheDir, modulePath = moduleDir,
inputPath = inputDir,
    outputPath = outputDir)</pre>
```

```
mySim <- simInit(times = times, params = parameters, modules =
modules,
    objects = objects, paths = paths)

dev()
mySimOut <- spades(mySim, .plotInitialTime = times$start, debug
= TRUE)</pre>
```

# 8.3 Testing the burn algorithm

```
Require(c("data.table", "DEoptim", "parallel", "SDMTools"))
s <- simInit(times = times, params = parameters, modules =
modules,
    objects = objects, paths = paths)</pre>
```

# 8.4 Optimizing parameters

The following code chunk tries to find values of spawnNewActive that creates "reasonable" fire shapes at all sizes.

```
pixelSize <- 250
ros <- raster(extent(0, pixelSize * 1000, 0, pixelSize * 1000),</pre>
    res = pixelSize, vals = 0)
ros <- ros == 0
fireSize <- 1e+05
maxRetriesPerID <- 4 ## 4 retries (5 attempts total)</pre>
spreadProb <- 0.9</pre>
spawnNewActive <- c(0.46, 0.2, 0.26, 0.11)
sizeCutoffs <- c(8000, 20000)
NineCorners <- cellFromRowCol(ros, row = nrow(ros)/4 \star rep(1:3,
    3), col = ncol(ros)/4 * rep(1:3, each = 3)
centreCell <- cellFromRowCol(ros, row = nrow(ros)/2, col =</pre>
ncol(ros)/2)
## Set variables
objs <- c("ros", "centreCell", "fireSize", "spawnNewActive",</pre>
    "sizeCutoffs", "spreadProb")
pkgs <- c("data.table", "LandWebUtils", "raster", "SDMTools",</pre>
    "SpaDES.tools")
```

```
### SET UP CLUSTER FOR PARALLEL
wantParallel <- TRUE

## numCores should be >= 70 and needs to be multiple of number
of params to be fit (7)
numCores <- (parallelly::availableCores(constraints =
c("connections")) %/% 7) * 7</pre>
```

```
machineName <- strsplit(Sys.info()["nodename"], "[.]")[[1]][1]</pre>
clNames <- switch(machineName,</pre>
                   pinus = c(
                     ## TODO: ssh cluster not yet working
                     rep("localhost", 0),
                     rep("picea.for-cast.ca", 20),
                     rep("pseudotsuga.for-cast.ca", 82)
                   ),
                   picea = rep("localhost", numCores),
                   rep("localhost", numCores))
if (wantParallel) {
  cl <- landmine_optim_clusterSetup(nodes = clNames)</pre>
} else {
  cl <- NULL
}
if (!inherits(cl[[1]], "forknode")) {
  landmine_optim_clusterExport(cl, objs = objs, pkgs = pkgs)
}
```

#### 8.4.1 Visual examination

```
## assign with suffix to facilitate multiple DEoptim runs
optimParams <- data.frame(date = format(Sys.time(), "%Y-%m-%d"),
    pixelSize = pixelSize) |>
    cbind(rbind(opt_sn$optim$bestmem))

fDEoptim <- file.path(moduleDir, "LandMine", "data",
    "LandMine_DEoptim_params.csv")
prevVals <- read.csv(fDEoptim)
write.csv(rbind(prevVals, optimParams), fDEoptim, row.names =
FALSE)

parallel::stopCluster(cl)
cl <- NULL</pre>
```

### 8.5 Alternate optimization

A second (alternative) version tries the optimization using fewer parameters, to test whether a simpler version gets better/different results. Although this version was not used for the final module, we preserve it here for posterity.

```
fs_optim2 <- c(0.2, 1:8) * 10000

opt_sn2 <- DEoptim(landmine_optim_fitSN2, lower = c(1, -1, 1,
        3, 4), upper = c(3, -0.3, 3, 4, 5), control =
    DEoptim.control(VTR = 0.001,
    itermax = 40, cluster = cl, strategy = 6), ros = ros,
    centreCell = centreCell,
    fireSizes = fs_optim2, desiredPerimeterArea = 0.003)</pre>
```

#### 8.5.1 Visual examination

### 8.6 Manual inspection of optimization results

#### 8.6.1 Original (2018) version

The original version was run using 100m pixels, despite the simulations being run using 250m pixels. This was corrected and rerun below.

```
## 10,000 hectares burns gave this
spawnNewActive[2:3] <- c(0.0235999945606232, 0.0263073265505955)</pre>
# 100,000 hectare burns gave this spawnNewActive <-
# 10^c(-1.264780, -1.970946, -1.288213, -2.202580)
spawnNewActive <- 10^c(-0.586503645288758, -1.08108837273903,
    -2.14391896536108, -1.00221184641123)
sizeCutoffs <- 10<sup>^</sup>c(3.37711253212765, 4.52040993282571)
sns <- c(-1.733262, -0.933318, -2.562183, -2.493687, 3.064458,
    4.812305)
spawnNewActive <- 10^sns[1:4]</pre>
sizeCutoffs <- 10^sns[5:6]</pre>
# spawnNewActive <- 10^c(-1.646419, -1.815395, -2.809013,
# -2.613337) sizeCutoffs <- 10^c(3.888317, 4.641961)
## 100,000 pixel fires -- the next worked, but I think we
## can get better sns <- structure(</pre>
## c(-1.652459, -0.962121, -0.964879, -2.304902, 3.522345,
## 4.173242), .Names = c('par1',
sns <- structure(c(-1.641197, -1.152821, -0.697335, -1.751917,</pre>
    3.720378, 4.034059), .Names = c("par1", "par2", "par3",
    "par4",
    "par5", "par6"))
spawnNewActive <- 10^sns[1:4]</pre>
sizeCutoffs <- 10^(sns[5:6])</pre>
fireSize <- 30000
## 100
sns <- c(-0.77716149196811, -0.769325340166688,</pre>
-1.2772046867758,
```

```
-1.99332102853805, 3.14260408212431, 4.46155184064992)
## 1000
sns \leftarrow c(-0.775107, -1.03176, -0.599669, -1.958105, 3.048958,
    4.275831)
## seemed good for 100,000, pretty good for 1e3
sns \leftarrow c(-1.54885, -0.97052, -1.38305, -1.93759, 3.20379,
4.13237)
## good for 100 000, 10 000 ha -- too sinuous for 1000 and
## 100 ha
sns \leftarrow c(-1.537203, -1.462981, -0.524957, -1.002567, 3.642046,
    4.501754)
## good for 100 000, 10 000 ha (except some fires @ 1e5
## don't make it to full size) -- too sinuous for smaller
sns <- c(-1.484338, -1.22044, -2.948275, -2.15594, 3.945281,
    4.904893)
sns \leftarrow c(-1.495247, -0.800494, -1.58235, -2.270646, 3.530671,
    4.663245)
## final optimization after 75 iterations, Good: 1e5, 1e4
sns \leftarrow c(-1.47809, -0.86224, -1.34532, -1.93568, 3.27149,
4.20741)
## based on equal weights 10^(1:5)
sns <- c(-0.923528, -1.804549, -1.760455, -1.793594, 1.683355,
    4.466668)
## With spreadProb = 0.9 # Pretty GOOD!
sns \leftarrow c(-0.73152, -0.501823, -0.605968, -1.809726, 2.202732,
    4.69606, 0.9) ## used in module
optimParams <- data.frame(date = "2018-05-18", pixelSize = 100)</pre>
    cbind(rbind(sns))
write.csv(optimParams, fDEoptim, row.names = FALSE)
```

```
## With spreadProb = 0.9 # Optimal
sns \leftarrow c(-0.978947, -0.540946, -0.790736, -1.583039, 2.532013,
    4.267547, 0.94673)
spawnNewActive <- 10^sns[1:4]</pre>
sizeCutoffs <- 10^(sns[5:6])</pre>
if (length(sns) == 7) spreadProb <- sns[7]</pre>
# from linear model version
par <- c(1.548899, -0.396904, 2.191424, 3.903082, 4.854002)
sizeCutoffs <- 10^c(par[4], par[5])</pre>
sna <- min(-0.15, par[1] + par[2] * log10(fireSize))</pre>
sna \leftarrow 10^{\text{c}}(\text{sna * par[3]}, \text{sna * 2 * par[3]}, \text{sna * 3 * par[3]},
    sna * 4 * par[3]
spawnNewActive <- sna</pre>
clearPlot()
dev()
for (i in 1:5) {
    fireSize <- 10^i
    dim <- round(sqrt(fireSize) * 5 * 250)</pre>
    ros <- raster(extent(0, dim, 0, dim), res = 250, vals = 1)</pre>
    centreCell <- cellFromRowCol(ros, rownr = nrow(ros)/2, colnr</pre>
= ncol(ros)/2)
    reps <- paste0("rep", 1:4 + (log10(fireSize) - 1) * 4)
    burnedMapList <- landmine_optim_clusterWrap(cl = cl, nodes =</pre>
clNames,
        reps = reps, objs = objs, pkgs = pkgs)
    names(burnedMapList$out) <- reps</pre>
    burnedMapList <- purrr::transpose(burnedMapList$out)</pre>
    cl <- burnedMapList$cl</pre>
    do.call(rbind, burnedMapList$LM)
    Plot(burnedMapList$burnedMap, cols = c("red"), new = FALSE,
        na.color = "white", legend = FALSE, visualSqueeze = 0.7,
        title = paste0("Fire size: ", fireSize))
}
```

```
reps <- paste0("rep", 1:1)</pre>
perims <- list()</pre>
perm <- list()</pre>
mod <- list()</pre>
dev()
clearPlot()
fireSizes <- 10<sup>^</sup>(4)
for (fs in fireSizes) {
    for (i in 1:1) {
         ros <- raster(extent(0, 2e+05, 0, 2e+05), res = 250,
             vals = 1)
         NineCorners <- cellFromRowCol(ros, rownr = nrow(ros)/4 *
            rep(1:3, 3), colnr = ncol(ros)/4 * rep(1:3, each = 3))
         centreCell <- NineCorners</pre>
         ran \leftarrow runif(4, -3, -1)
         spawnNewActive <- 10^ran</pre>
         # spawnNewActive <- 10^c(-0.1, -0.75, -1.2,
         \# ran*2.5)
         fireSize = rep(fs, length(centreCell))
         sizeCutoffs \leftarrow 10^{\circ}c(1, 3)
         burnedMapList <- landmine_optim_clusterWrap(cl = cl,</pre>
             nodes = clNames, reps = reps, objs = objs, pkgs =
             pkgs)
         names(burnedMapList$out) <- reps</pre>
         burnedMapList <- purrr::transpose(burnedMapList$out)</pre>
         cl <- burnedMapList$cl</pre>
         do.call(rbind, burnedMapList$LM)
         Plot(burnedMapList$burnedMap, new = TRUE, zero.color =
         "white")
         perims[[i]] <- data.frame(perim =</pre>
burnedMapList$LM$rep1$perim.area.ratio,
             spawnNewActive = mean(spawnNewActive), others =
             t(spawnNewActive))
    }
```

#### 8.6.2 Current (2022) version

The original version was run using 100m pixels, despite the simulations being run using 250m pixels. This version uses 250m pixels.

```
## final optimization after 200 iterations
## (landmine_optim_fitSN)
optimParams <- read.csv(fDEoptim)
sns <- optimParams[, grepl("^par", colnames(optimParams))] |>
    tail(1) ## take last row

spawnNewActive <- 10^sns[1:4]
sizeCutoffs <- 10^(sns[5:6])
spreadProb <- sns[7]

## from linear model version
par <- c(1.548899, -0.396904, 2.191424, 3.903082, 4.854002)
sizeCutoffs <- 10^c(par[4], par[5])
sna <- min(-0.15, par[1] + par[2] * log10(fireSize))
sna <- 10^c(sna * par[3], sna * 2 * par[3], sna * 3 * par[3],
    sna * 4 * par[3])</pre>
```

```
spawnNewActive <- sna</pre>
clearPlot()
for (i in 1:5) {
    fireSize <- 10^i
    dim <- round(sqrt(fireSize) * 5 * 250)</pre>
    ros <- raster(extent(0, dim, 0, dim), res = 250, vals = 1)</pre>
    centreCell <- cellFromRowCol(ros, row = nrow(ros)/2, col =</pre>
ncol(ros)/2)
    reps <- paste0("rep", 1:4 + (log10(fireSize) - 1) * 4)</pre>
    burnedMapList <- landmine_optim_clusterWrap(cl = cl, nodes =</pre>
clNames,
        reps = reps, objs = objs, pkgs = pkgs)
    names(burnedMapList$out) <- reps</pre>
    burnedMapList <- purrr::transpose(burnedMapList$out)</pre>
    cl <- burnedMapList$cl</pre>
    do.call(rbind, burnedMapList$LM)
    Plot(burnedMapList$burnedMap, cols = c("red"), new = FALSE,
        na.color = "white", legend = FALSE, visualSqueeze = 0.7,
        title = paste0("Fire size: ", fireSize))
}
```

#### 8.6.3 Cleaning up

```
parallel::stopCluster(cl)
unlink(cacheDir, recursive = TRUE)
```

#### 8.6.4 Code and data availability

Code available from https://github.com/PredictiveEcology/LandMine.

#### 8.6.5 Links to other modules

Originally developed as part of the LandWeb<sup>3</sup> project. ## References

[1] David W Andison. "Managing for landscape patterns in the sub-boreal forests of British Columbia". PhD Thesis. Vancouver, BC: University of British Columbia, 1996. URL: https://open.library.ubc.ca/cIRcle/collections/ubctheses/831/items/1.0075275.

[2] David W. Andison. "Temporal patterns of age-class distributions on foothills landscapes in Alberta". In: *Ecography* 21.5 (1998), pp. 543–550. ISSN: 09067590. DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-0587.1998.tb00446.x<sup>4</sup>.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup>https://github.com/PredictiveEcology/LandWeb

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>4</sup>https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1600-0587.1998.tb00446.x

# Model outputs

- burnSummaries module ... (TODO)
- LandMine module ... (TODO)
- LandWeb\_outputs module ... (TODO)
- LandWeb\_summary module ... (TODO)
- timeSinceFire module ... (TODO)

Previously-run model outputs are available to download for authorized users, and are described below.

# 8.7 Currently Selected Spatial Area

• Currently selected reporting polygon (.shp)

# 8.8 Large Patches Data for study region

- Large Patches Data (.csv)
- Large patches histograms (.png)

# 8.9 Leading Vegetation Cover Data for study region

- Leading Vegetation Cover Data (.csv)
- Leading Vegetation Cover histograms (.png)
- Leading Vegetation Cover boxplots (.png)

204 8 Model outputs

# 8.10 Simulation Rasters (cropped to study region)

- Flammability maps (.grd)
- Time Since Fire maps (.tif)
- Vegetation type maps (.grd, .tif)

# 8.11 Additional R Data Files (advanced users)

• Simulation data files (.RData, .rds)

The downloaded outputs are bundled into a zip file (e.g., LandWeb\_v2.0.0\_2019-09-23.zip) with the following directory and file structure:

```
LandWeb_v2.0.0_2019-09-23/
|_ boxplots/
    |_ leading_*.csv
 |_ histograms/
     |_ largePatches/
         |_ 100/
         |_ 500/
         |_ 1000/
         |_ 5000/
     |_ leading/
     |_ largePatches_*.csv
 |_ polygons/
 _ rasters/
     |_ rstTimeSinceFire_*.tif
     |_ vegTypeMap_*.tif*
 |_ INFO.md
 | README.md
 |_ simulationOutput_*.rds
```

# burnSummaries Module

#### 9.0.0.1 Authors:

Alex M Chubaty achubaty@for-cast.ca<sup>1</sup> [aut, cre] (https://orcid.org/0000-0001-7146-8135)

### 9.1 Module Overview

## 9.1.1 Module summary

Provide a brief summary of what the module does / how to use the module.

Module documentation should be written so that others can use your module. This is a template for module documentation, and should be changed to reflect your module.

#### 9.1.2 Module inputs and parameters

Describe input data required by the module and how to obtain it (e.g., directly from online sources or supplied by other modules) If sourceURL is specified, downloadData("burnSummaries", "..") may be sufficient. Table 9.1 shows the full list of module inputs.

**TABLE 9.1:** List of *burnSummaries* input objects and their description.

| objectName    | objectClass | desc                                                     | sourceURL |
|---------------|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| speciesLayers | RasterStack | initial percent cover raster layers used for simulation. | NA        |
| speciesLayers | RasterStack | initial percent cover raster layers used for simulation. | NA        |

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>mailto:achubaty@for-cast.ca

**TABLE 9.2:** List of *burnSummaries* parameters and their description.

|                  | paramClass | default  |     |     | paramDesc                                                                                                                  |  |  |
|------------------|------------|----------|-----|-----|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|
| paramName        | parametass |          | min | max |                                                                                                                            |  |  |
| reps             | integer    | 1, 2, 3, | 1   | NA  | number of replicates/runs per study area.                                                                                  |  |  |
| simOutputPath    | character  | /tmp/Rtm | NA  | NA  | Directory specifying the location of the simulation outputs.                                                               |  |  |
| upload           | logical    | FALSE    | NA  | NA  | if TRUE, uses the 'googledrive' package to upload figures.                                                                 |  |  |
| uploadTo         | character  | NA       | NA  | NA  | if 'upload = TRUE', a Google Drive folder id corresponding to '.studyAreaName'.                                            |  |  |
| .plots           | character  | screen   | NA  | NA  | Used by Plots function, which can be optionally used here                                                                  |  |  |
| .plotInitialTime | numeric    | 0        | NA  | NA  | Describes the simulation time at which the first plot event should occur.                                                  |  |  |
| .plotInterval    | numeric    | NA       | NA  | NA  | Describes the simulation time interval between plot events.                                                                |  |  |
| .saveInitialTime | numeric    | NA       | NA  | NA  | Describes the simulation time at which the first save event should occur.                                                  |  |  |
| .saveInterval    | numeric    | NA       | NA  | NA  | This describes the simulation time interval between save events.                                                           |  |  |
| .studyAreaName   | character  | NA       | NA  | NA  | Human-readable name for the study area used - e.g., a hash of the studyarea obtained using 'reproducible::studyAreaName()' |  |  |
| .seed            | list       |          | NA  | NA  | Named list of seeds to use for each event (names).                                                                         |  |  |
| .useCache        | logical    | FALSE    | NA  | NA  | Should caching of events or module be used?                                                                                |  |  |

**TABLE 9.3:** List of *burnSummaries* outputs and their description.

| objectName | objectClass | desc                     |
|------------|-------------|--------------------------|
| fireSizes  | data.table  | summary fire sizes table |

Provide a summary of user-visible parameters (Table 9.2)

#### **9.1.3** Events

Describe what happens for each event type.

# 9.1.4 Plotting

Write what is plotted.

# 9.1.5 Saving

Write what is saved.

# 9.1.6 Module outputs

Description of the module outputs (Table 9.3).

### 9.1.7 Links to other modules

Describe any anticipated linkages to other modules, such as modules that supply input data or do post-hoc analysis.

9.1 Module Overview 207

# 9.1.8 Getting help

• provide a way for people to obtain help (e.g., module repository issues page) ## References

# 10

# LandWeb\_output Module

#### 10.0.0.1 Authors:

Eliot J B McIntire eliot.mcintire@nrcan-rncan.gc.ca<sup>1</sup> [aut, cre], Yong Luo yluo1@lakeheadu.ca<sup>2</sup> [aut], Alex M. Chubaty achubaty@for-cast.ca<sup>3</sup> [ctb]

### 10.1 Module Overview

# 10.1.1 Module summary

This module saves LandR Biomass outputs for use with LandWeb post-processing.

## 10.1.2 Module inputs and parameters

Table 10.1 shows the full list of module inputs.

Provide a summary of user-visible parameters (Table 10.2)

**TABLE 10.1:** List of *LandWeb\_output* input objects and their description.

| objectName         |             | desc                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | source URL                                                                                  |
|--------------------|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cobortData         | dara rable  | age cohort-blomass table booked to pixel group map by 'pixell'souplindes' at succession time step, this is imported from forest succession module.                                                                                                   | NA NA                                                                                       |
| fireketurninterval |             | A menor layer that is a factor menor, with at least 1 column-called fineleman lanerval, representing the fire return interval in years.                                                                                                              | NA NA                                                                                       |
|                    |             | updated community map at each encoration time step                                                                                                                                                                                                   | NA .                                                                                        |
|                    |             | this ruster contains two pieces of information. Full study area with five system innerval artiforms.                                                                                                                                                 | NA .                                                                                        |
| reflimekincelire   | Rainer      | a time since five raster layer                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | NA .                                                                                        |
|                    |             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | https://raw.githubuseconnett.com/dcys/LANDIS-II_IA_generalUseFiles/master/speciesTraits.cov |
| sppColorVect       | character   | A named vector of colors to use for plotting. The names must be in 'simpspeciesEquiralency  simpsppEquivCol  ', and should also contain a color for 'Mixed'                                                                                          | NA NA                                                                                       |
| spp@quiv           | dara rable  | table of species equivalencies. See Land& appliquivalencies CA.                                                                                                                                                                                      | NA NA                                                                                       |
| speciesLayers      | lannifrack  | Momans percentage raster layers by species in Casada species map                                                                                                                                                                                     | http://toos.pfc.forostry.ca/kNN-Species.tar                                                 |
|                    | KantriLayer |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | http://www.pfc.foeestry.ca/kNN-StructureStandVolume.tar                                     |
|                    |             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | NA .                                                                                        |
|                    |             | Polygon to use as the parametrication study area. Note that 'studyleverlarge' is only used for parameter estimation, and can be larger than the actual study area used for lands simulations (s.g., larger than 'studyleverl' in lands Biomass.com). | NA .                                                                                        |
| studyAssaluporting |             | multipolygon (typically emaller)unbullered than endy-leva) to use for plotting importing. Defaults to an area in Southwestern Alberta, Canada.                                                                                                       | NA .                                                                                        |
| nummaryFeriod      | numeric     | a numeric vector contains the start year and end year of numerary                                                                                                                                                                                    | NA .                                                                                        |

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>mailto:eliot.mcintire@nrcan-rncan.gc.ca

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup>mailto:yluo1@lakeheadu.ca

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup>mailto:achubaty@for-cast.ca

**TABLE 10.2:** List of *LandWeb\_output* parameters and their description.

|                  | paramClass | default |    | max |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |  |  |  |
|------------------|------------|---------|----|-----|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|
|                  | numeric    | 2       | NA | NA  | How to define mixed stands: I for any species admixture; 2 for deciduous > conifer. See ?vegTypeMapGenerator.                                                                                                                                             |  |  |  |
| sppEquivCol      | character  | LandWeb |    | NA  | humn in simtspecieEquivalency data.table to use as a naming convention                                                                                                                                                                                    |  |  |  |
| summaryInterval  |            | 50      | NA | NA  | This describes summary interval for this module                                                                                                                                                                                                           |  |  |  |
|                  | numeric    | 0.8     | 0  | 1   | a number that define whether a species is leading for a given pixel                                                                                                                                                                                       |  |  |  |
| .plotInitialTime | numeric    | 0       | NA | NA  | This describes the simulation time at which the first plot event should occur                                                                                                                                                                             |  |  |  |
| .plotInterval    | numeric    | 1       | NA | NA  | This describes the simulation time interval between plot events                                                                                                                                                                                           |  |  |  |
|                  |            | object  |    |     | Passed to 'types' in 'Flots' (see 'Plots'). There are a few plots that are made within this module, if set. Note that plots (or their data) saving will ONLY occur at 'end(sim)'. If 'NA', plotting is turned off completely (this includes plot saving). |  |  |  |
| .useCache        | logical    | FALSE   | NA | NA  | tould this entire module be run with caching activated? This is generally intended for data-type modules, where stochasticity and time are not relevant                                                                                                   |  |  |  |

**TABLE 10.3:** List of *LandWeb\_output* outputs and their description.

| objectName  | objectClass | desc                                  |
|-------------|-------------|---------------------------------------|
| standAgeMap | SpatRaster  | stand ages derived from 'cohortData'. |
| vegTypeMap  | SpatRaster  | map of leading tree species.          |

# 10.1.3 Module outputs

Description of the module outputs (Table 10.3).

#### 10.1.4 Links to other modules

Originally developed as part of the LandWeb<sup>4</sup> project.

# 10.1.5 Getting help

https://github.com/fRI-Research/LandWeb\_output/issues ## References

 $<sup>^4</sup>https://github.com/Predictive {\hbox{\it E}} cology/Land Web$ 

# timeSinceFire Module

This documentation is work in progress. Please report any discrepancies or omissions at https://github.com/fRI-Research/timeSinceFire/issues.

#### 11.0.0.1 Authors:

Steve G Cumming stevec@sbf.ulaval.ca<sup>1</sup> [aut, cre], Alex M. Chubaty achubaty@for-cast.ca<sup>2</sup> [ctb]

#### 11.1 Module Overview

#### 11.1.1 Module summary

Yet Another Age Map Maintainer. This one is peculiar to the LandWeb application.

ageMap is incremented without bound on all flammable cells; cells identified as having been burned in the current year are set to 0.

Any statistics on age structure are to be calculated here, but none are yet implemented...because with the current fire model they would be pretty boring.

### 11.1.2 Module inputs and parameters

Table 11.1 shows the full list of module inputs.

A summary of user-visible parameters is provided in Table 11.2.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>mailto:stevec@sbf.ulaval.ca

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup>mailto:achubaty@for-cast.ca

**TABLE 11.1:** List of *timeSinceFire* input objects and their description.

| objectName         | objectClass | desc                                                                     | sourceURL |
|--------------------|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| fireReturnInterval | RasterLayer | A Raster where the pixels represent the fire return interval, in years.  | NA        |
| rstCurrentBurn     | RasterLayer | Binary raster of fires, 1 meaning 'burned', 0 or NA is non-burned        | NA        |
| rstFlammable       | RasterLayer | A binary Raster, where 1 means 'can burn'.                               | NA        |
| rstTimeSinceFire   | RasterLayer | A Raster where the pixels represent the number of years since last burn. | NA        |

**TABLE 11.2:** List of *timeSinceFire* parameters and their description.

|                  | paramClass | default | min |    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |  |  |  |
|------------------|------------|---------|-----|----|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|--|
| fireTimestep     | integer    | 1       | NA  |    | number of time units between successive fire events.                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |  |  |
| returnInterval   | numeric    | 1       |     |    | Interval between main events                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |  |  |  |
| startTime        | numeric    | 0       |     |    | time of first burn event                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |  |  |  |
| .plotInitialTime |            | NA      |     |    | simulation time at which the first plot event should occur                                                                                                                                                                                                |  |  |  |
| .plotInterval    | numeric    | NA      | NA  |    | simulation time at which the first plot event should occur                                                                                                                                                                                                |  |  |  |
|                  |            |         |     |    | Passed to 'types' in 'Plots' (see 'Plots'). There are a few plots that are made within this module, if set. Note that plots (or their data) saving will ONLY occur at 'end(simy'. If 'NA', plotting is turned off completely (this includes plot saving). |  |  |  |
| .saveInitialTime |            |         |     |    | simulation time at which the first save event should occur                                                                                                                                                                                                |  |  |  |
| .saveInterval    |            | NA      |     |    | simulation time at which the first save event should occur                                                                                                                                                                                                |  |  |  |
| .useCache        | logical    | FALSE   | NA  | NA | simulation time at which the first save event should occur                                                                                                                                                                                                |  |  |  |

#### 11.1.3 **Events**

#### 11.1.3.1 Init

The Init event creates the RasterLayer rstTimeSinceFire. To do this, it rasterizes the template vegetation map LCC05 using the FireReturnInterval field of the SpatialPoygonDataFrame shpStudyRegion. This procedure retains the NAs which mask the actual study region within the template bounding rectangle.

Then, the RasterLayer rstFlammable is used to mask out areas of open water, rock, etc which can't burn and thus for which timeSinceFire is not applicable. These become NAs in rstTimeSinceFire.

The results is that all flammable cells within each polygon in the shapefile are set to the fire return interval specified for that polygon / ecoregion. Under the basic van Wagner model being implemented, this is the expected landscape mean age. The ecoregion age structure will equilibrate to the exponential distribution within a few multiples of the return interval.

No colour ramp or legend is created for this layer.

In the short term, this initial uniform age distribution will result in very high proportions of cells with TSFs greater than the return interval. If this becomes a problem, one could initialize to the regional median age. This can be done by multiplying the FireReturnInterval by log(2) and then rounding; or some other lower quantile could be chosen: see the wikipedia page<sup>3</sup> for the general quantile function.

Alternatively, a random exponential age structure could be generated for

³https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Exponential\_distribution

11.1 Module Overview 213

**TABLE 11.3:** List of *timeSinceFire* outputs and their description.

| objectName       | objectClass | desc                                                                                       |
|------------------|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| burnLoci         | integer     | Cell indices where burns occurred in the latest year. It is derived from 'rstCurrentBurn'. |
| rstTimeSinceFire | RasterLayer | A Raster where the pixels represent the number of years since last burn.                   |

each ecoregion from the current rstTimeSinceFire, roughly as follows. See the wiki page for details and possible alternative methods.

```
U_ <- runif(ncell(rstTimeSinceFire))
T_ <- (-log(U_)) * rstTimeSinceFire[]
rstTimeSinceFire[] <- round(T_)</pre>
```

#### 11.1.3.2 Plotting

A bare call to Plot(sim\$rstTimeSinceFire). If you really want to see this, you'll have to live with the automated colour scheme and legend, or hack Init to your satisfaction.

#### 11.1.3.3 Saving

Nothing is saved at present.

#### 11.1.3.4 Age

This is the main event. rstFlammable is incremented by one. Then burned cells, as specified in the input vector burnLoci are set to age 0.

# 11.1.4 Module outputs

Description of the module outputs (Table 11.3).

## 11.1.5 Code and data availability

Code available from https://github.com/fRI-Research/timeSinceFire.

# 11.1.6 Links to other modules

Originally developed as part of the LandWeb<sup>4</sup> project. ## References

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>4</sup>https://github.com/PredictiveEcology/LandWeb

# 12

# LandWeb\_summary Module

This documentation is work in progress. Please report any discrepancies or omissions at <a href="https://github.com/PredictiveEcology/LandWeb\_summary/issues">https://github.com/PredictiveEcology/LandWeb\_summary/issues</a>.

#### 12.0.0.1 Authors:

Eliot J B McIntire eliot.mcintire@nrcan-rncan.gc.ca<sup>1</sup> [aut, cre], Alex M. Chubaty achubaty@for-cast.ca<sup>2</sup> [aut]

#### 12.1 Module Overview

#### 12.1.1 Module summary

LandWeb simulation post-processing and summary creation.

### 12.1.2 Module inputs and parameters

Table 12.1 shows the full list of module inputs.

Provide a summary of user-visible parameters (Table 12.2)

**TABLE 12.1:** List of *LandWeb\_summary* input objects and their description.

|               |             | desc                                                                                                                                                   |    |  |  |
|---------------|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----|--|--|
| flammableMap  | Raster      | A raster layer, with 0, 1 and NA, where 1 indicates areas that are flammable, 0 not flammable (e.g., lakes) and NA not applicable (e.g., masked)       |    |  |  |
| ml            | map         | map list object from LandWeb_preamble                                                                                                                  | NA |  |  |
| speciesLayers | RasterStack | initial percent cover raster layers used for simulation.                                                                                               | NA |  |  |
| sppColorVect  | character   | A named vector of colors to use for plotting. The names must be in 'sim\$sppEquiv[[P(sim)\$sppEquivCol]]', and should also contain a color for 'Mixed' | NA |  |  |
| sppEquiv      | data.table  | table of species equivalencies. See 'LandR::sppEquivalencies_CA'.                                                                                      | NA |  |  |

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>mailto:eliot.mcintire@nrcan-rncan.gc.ca

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup>mailto:achubaty@for-cast.ca

**TABLE 12.2:** List of LandWeb\_summary parameters and their description.

| paramName              | paramClass | default  | min | max | paramDesc                                                                                                                                                                |  |  |
|------------------------|------------|----------|-----|-----|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|
| ageClasses             | character  | Young, I | NA  | NA  | descriptions/labels for age classes (seral stages)                                                                                                                       |  |  |
| ageClassCutOffs        | integer    | 0,40,8   | NA  | NA  | defines the age boundaries between age classes                                                                                                                           |  |  |
| ageClassMaxAge         | integer    | 400      | NA  | NA  | aximum possible age                                                                                                                                                      |  |  |
| reps                   | integer    | 1, 2, 3, | 1   | NA  | number of replicates/runs per study area.                                                                                                                                |  |  |
| simOutputPath          | character  | /tmp/Rtm | NA  | NA  | Directory specifying the location of the simulation outputs.                                                                                                             |  |  |
| sppEquivCol            | character  | EN_gener | NA  | NA  | The column in 'sim\$sppEquiv' data.table to use as a naming convention                                                                                                   |  |  |
| standAgeMapFromCohorts | logical    | FALSE    | NA  | NA  | should stand age maps be calculated from 'cohortData' instead of time since fire                                                                                         |  |  |
| summaryInterval        | integer    | 100      | NA  | NA  | simulation time interval at which to take 'snapshots' used for summary analyses                                                                                          |  |  |
| summaryPeriod          | integer    | 700,1000 | NA  | NA  | lower and upper end of the range of simulation times used for summary analyses                                                                                           |  |  |
| timeSeriesTimes        | integer    | 601, 602 | NA  | NA  | timesteps to use to build timeseries rasters showing leading cover change over time                                                                                      |  |  |
| upload                 | logical    | FALSE    | NA  | NA  | if TRUE, uses the 'googledrive' package to upload figures.                                                                                                               |  |  |
| uploadTo               | character  | NA       | NA  | NA  | f 'upload = TRUE', a Google Drive folder id corresponding to '.studyAreaName'.                                                                                           |  |  |
| vegLeadingProportion   | numeric    | 0.8      | 0   | 1   | a number that defines whether a species is leading for a given pixel                                                                                                     |  |  |
| version                | integer    | 3        | 2   | 3   | LandWeb model version (2 for runs using vegetation parameter forcings, else 3).                                                                                          |  |  |
| .clInit                | 100        |          | NA  | NA  | Quoted expression to be evaluated on each node in a parallel cluster when running 'map' analyses. Useful to set options or create non-serializable objects on each node. |  |  |
| .makeTiles             | logical    | FALSE    | NA  | NA  | If 'TRUE', will generate leaflet tiles during postprocessing.                                                                                                            |  |  |
| .plots                 | character  | screen   | NA  | NA  | Used by Plots function, which can be optionally used here                                                                                                                |  |  |
| .plotInitialTime       | numeric    | 0        | NA  | NA  | Describes the simulation time at which the first plot event should occur.                                                                                                |  |  |
| .plotInterval          | numeric    | NA       | NA  | NA  | Describes the simulation time interval between plot events.                                                                                                              |  |  |
| .saveInitialTime       | numeric    | NA       | NA  | NA  | Describes the simulation time at which the first save event should occur.                                                                                                |  |  |
| .saveInterval          | numeric    | NA       | NA  | NA  | This describes the simulation time interval between save events.                                                                                                         |  |  |
| .studyAreaName         | character  | NA       | NA  | NA  | Human-readable name for the study area used - e.g., a hash of the study area obtained using 'reproducible:studyAreaName()'                                               |  |  |
| .useCache              | character  | .inputOb | NA  | NA  | Names of events to be cached.                                                                                                                                            |  |  |
| .useParallel           | logical    | TRUE     | NA  | NA  | Logical. If 'TRUE', and there is more than one calculation to do at any stage, it will create and use a parallel cluster via 'makeOptimalCluster()'.                     |  |  |

**TABLE 12.3:** List of *LandWeb\_summary* outputs and their description.

| objectName | objectClass | desc            |
|------------|-------------|-----------------|
| ml         | map         | map list object |

### 12.1.3 Module outputs

#### 12.1.3.1 Large Patches Data for study region

- Large Patches Data (.csv)
- Large patches histograms (.png)

### 12.1.3.2 Leading Vegetation Cover Data for study region

- Leading Vegetation Cover Data (.csv)
- Leading Vegetation Cover histograms (.png)
- Leading Vegetation Cover boxplots (.png)

Description of the module outputs (Table 12.3).

#### 12.1.4 Links to other modules

Initially developed for use with the LandWeb<sup>3</sup> model.

 $<sup>^3</sup>$ https://github.com/PredictiveEcology/LandWeb

### 12.1.5 Getting help

 $\bullet \ \ https://github.com/PredictiveEcology/LandWeb\_summary/issues \textit{\## References}$ 

217

# Web app

As of spring 2023, fRI Research no longer hosts the LandWeb App. However, with appropriate access to the output data, the app may be run in a local shiny instance.

Previously available from https://landweb.ca.

## Modifying LandWeb

#### Important note regarding caching:

When caching simulation events, modifications made to the code that do not change the input values to a function or module event will likely not trigger a re-evaluation of the cached call. For example, when adding new study areas within the LandWeb\_preamble module (examples 1-3 below). Therefore, users will need to clear their simulation caches to ensure these changes are picked up for caching.

#### 13.1 Example 1: adding new reporting polygons

'Reporting polygons' refer to the polygons by which LandWeb results are summarized within the study area. These are created in the LandWeb\_preamble module, and added to sim\$ml (an object of class map, from the map package). Reporting polygons are not used during simulation, but rather during post-processing in the LandWeb\_summaries module.

Adding a new reporting polygons is straightforward - one simply needs to edit the LandWeb\_preamble code to 1) create the object and 2) add it to the map (i.e., sim\$ml) object. For reporting polygons retrieved from public or Google Drive URLs, both steps may be combined in a single mapAdd() call.

Downstream use requires each set of reporting polygons to have a Name (and shinyLabel) field (column). These fields are typically derived from a single field in the raw source, and are thus identical in value. Additionally, the helper function joinreportingPolygons() should be used following a geospatial intersection operation (e.g., using postProcess()) to ensure that post-intersection labels like Names.1 and shinyLabel.1 are corrected.

#### 13.1.1 National-scale polygons

When adding reporting polygons derived from *national-scale* data sources, the changes need to be made in LandWeb\_preamble.R *as well as* each of the study-area-specific files in LandWeb\_preamble/R/ so that LandWeb runs using any study area can make use the new reporting polygons.

Next, we need to modify each of the regional files to make use of these new national polygons, but intersected and cropped to the study area:

#### 13.1.2 Regional or study-area-specific polygons

If adding regional or study-area-specific reporting polygons (e.g., for an FMA's active/passive landbase), then the new reporting polygons should be added to the corresponding study area code file found in LandWeb\_preamble/R.

```
## LandWeb_preamble/R/WestFraser.R
## 1. create the reporting polygons by downloading and cleaning
up shapefile
wf_br.lbstatus <- Cache(</pre>
  prepInputs,
  url = "https://drive.google.com/file/d/1A7N_EIbO2wMBI_YTmU2Z-
  bQwqC9sY_EC/",
  destinationPath = dataDir,
  targetFile = "BRL_Landbase.shp", alsoExtract = "similar",
  fun = "sf::st_read", studyArea = wf_br, useSAcrs = TRUE
wf_br.lbstatus <- wf_br.lbstatus[st_is_valid(wf_br.lbstatus), ]</pre>
## remove invalid geometries
wf_br.lbstatus(!st_is_empty(wf_br.lbstatus),
] ## remove empty polygons
wf_br.lbstatus <- Cache({</pre>
  mutate(wf_br.lbstatus, Name = LBC_LBStat, geometry = geometry,
  .keep = "used") |>
    group_by(Name) |>
    summarise(geometry = sf::st_union(geometry)) |>
    ungroup() |>
```

#### 13.2 Example 2: adding a new study area

Here we will create a custom study area for an area in northwestern Alberta. We want to use the latest FMU map from Spring 2022 (https://www.alberta.ca/forest-management-agreements).

1. **Externally from LandWeb**, create a shapefile (or similar) for the new study area, dissolving any internal polygon boundaries.

2. **Externally from LandWeb**, upload the shapefile to Google Drive and record the file's Google Drive ID.

```
shpfile <- "inputs/NW_AB.shp"
sf::st_write(nwab, shpfile)

result <- googledrive::drive_put(shpfile, googledrive]
::as_id("1LsYuuYICkcpElAkEABFM5zJXf5tTyMLG"))
fid <- result$id</pre>
```

3. Determine the name to use for running LandWeb with your new study area, and modify LandWeb\_preamble.R to use this new study area by name. Add a new case to the if-else block in LandWeb\_preamble.R:

```
} else if (grepl("customABNW", P(sim)$.studyAreaName))
{
   ml <- customABNW(ml, P(sim)$.studyAreaName, dataDir,
   sim$canProvs, P(sim)$bufferDist, asStudyArea = TRUE)</pre>
```

- 4. Add this new study area to the map object by wrapping the necessary components in a new function defined in a new file at LandWeb\_preamble/R. It's simplest to use an existing function/file in LandWeb\_preamble/R as a template, making modifications as appropriate for your new study area.
  - a. copy LandWeb\_preamble/R/provAB.R to
     LandWeb\_preamble/R/NWAB.R;
  - b. edit LandWeb\_preamble/R/NWAB.R, to crop AB to the new study area (NWAB) and subsquently using NWAB in lieu of AB throughout:
  - c. remove any unnecessary elements (e.g., planning units and planning regions).
- 5. You should now be able to run the LandWeb model setting '.stud-yAreaName = "customABNW" and it will use the new study area.

#### 13.3 Example 3: updating the LTHFC map

Using an updated version of a data source requires only basic code modifications provided the following conditions are met:

- spatial data attributes remain the same (e.g., field names are the same);
- a new URL is provided to the new data source;
- the new file name in different from the previous version (*e.g.*, it has a version number or date).

Here we show how to modify the LandWeb\_preamble module to use a hypothetical new version of the longs-term historic fire cycle (LTHFC) map.

- 1. looking at LandWeb\_preamble.R we see that the current version of the file is landweb\_ltfc\_v8a.shp.
- 2. create a new spatial layer and save as landweb\_ltfc\_v9.shp.
- 3. zip the new shapefile (with auxiliary files) upload this zip file to Google Drive as landweb\_ltfc\_v9.zip, making note of the Google Drive share URL.
- 4. modify the **two** mapAdd() calls in LandWeb\_preamble.R that reference the previous version (v8) of the LTHFC map to use the new (v9) Google Drive URL.

See https://github.com/PredictiveEcology/LandWeb/blob/development/R/new\_lthfc.R for the script that was used to make the v8a map from v8. See this LandWeb\_preamble commit<sup>1</sup> to see how this new version was added to the preamble module.

#### 13.4 Contributing changes

• via pull request<sup>2</sup> against development branch on GitHub

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>https://github.com/fRI-Research/LandWeb\_preamble/commit/ce7a9f02efe44d7bc8bb3ad1f22bd13c1ec12856

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup>https://docs.github.com/en/pull-requests/collaborating-with-pull-requests/proposing-changes-to-your-work-with-pull-requests/creating-a-pull-request

# References

## **Bibliography**

- [1] David W Andison. "Managing for landscape patterns in the sub-boreal forests of British Columbia". PhD Thesis. Vancouver, BC: University of British Columbia, 1996. URL: https://open.library.ubc.ca/cIRcle/collections/ubctheses/831/items/1.0075275.
- [2] David W. Andison. "Temporal patterns of age-class distributions on foothills landscapes in Alberta". In: *Ecography* 21.5 (1998), pp. 543–550. ISSN: 09067590. DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-0587.1998.tb00446.x<sup>3</sup>.
- [3] Ceres Barros et al. "Empowering ecological modellers with a PERFICT workflow: Seamlessly linking data, parameterisation, prediction, validation and visualisation". In: Methods in Ecology and Evolution 14 (2023), pp. 173–188. DOI: 10.1111/2041-210X.14034<sup>4</sup>.
- [4] A Beaudoin et al. "Mapping attributes of Canada's forests at moderate resolution through kNN and MODIS imagery". In: *Canadian Journal of Forest Research* 44 (2014), pp. 521–532. DOI: 10.1139/cjfr-2013-0401<sup>5</sup>.
- [5] A Beaudoin et al. Species composition, forest properties and land cover types across Canada's forests at 250m resolution for 2001 and 2011. 2017. DOI: 10. 23687 / EC9E2659 1C29 4DDB 87A2 6ACED147A990<sup>6</sup>. URL: http://open.canada.ca/data/en/dataset/ec9e2659 1c29 4ddb 87a2 6aced147a990.
- [6] P J Burton and S G Cumming. "Potential effects of climatic change on some western Canadian forests, based on phenological enhancements to a patch model of forest succession". In: *Water, Air and Soil Pollution* 82 (1995), pp. 401–414.
- [7] P J Burton and S G Cumming. "Potential effects of climatic change on some western Canadian forests, based on phenological enhancements to a patch model of forest succession". In: *Water, Air and Soil Pollution* 82 (1995), pp. 401–414.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup>https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1600-0587.1998.tb00446.x

<sup>4</sup>https://doi.org/10.1111/2041-210X.14034

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>5</sup>https://doi.org/10.1139/cjfr-2013-0401

<sup>6</sup>https://doi.org/10.23687/EC9E2659-1C29-4DDB-87A2-6ACED147A990

230 13 Bibliography

[8] Alex M. Chubaty and Eliot J. B. McIntire. SpaDES: Develop and Run Spatially Explicit Discrete Event Simulation Models. 2019. URL: https://CRAN.R-project.org/package=SpaDES.

- [9] John Cosco. COMMON ATTRIBUTE SCHEMA (CAS) FOR FOREST IN-VENTORIES ACROSS CANADA. Feb. 2011, p. 117.
- [10] E. H. (Ted) Hogg, J. P. Brandt, and M. Michaelian. "Impacts of a regional drought on the productivity, dieback, and biomass of western Canadian aspen forests". In: Canadian Journal of Forest Research 38.6 (June 2008), pp. 1373–1384. ISSN: 0045-5067, 1208-6037. DOI: 10.1139/X08-001.
- [11] Eliot J. B. McIntire and Alex M. Chubaty. reproducible: A Set of Tools that Enhance Reproducibility Beyond Package Management. 2020. URL: https://reproducible.predictiveecology.org,%20https://github.com/PredictiveEcology/reproducible.
- [12] Christian Messier, Sylvain Parent, and Yves Bergeron. "Effects of overstory and understory vegetation on the understory light environment in mixed boreal forests". In: *Journal of Vegetation Science* 9.4 (Aug. 1998), pp. 511–520. ISSN: 11009233. DOI: 10.2307/3237266<sup>8</sup>. URL: http://doi.wiley.com/10.2307/3237266.
- [13] NRCan. National Ecological Framework for Canada Terrestrial Ecozones. 2013.
- [14] Changhui Peng et al. "A drought-induced pervasive increase in tree mortality across Canada's boreal forests". In: *Nature Climate Change* 1.9 (Dec. 2011), pp. 467–471. ISSN: 1758-678X, 1758-6798. DOI: 10.1038/nclimate1293<sup>9</sup>. URL: http://www.nature.com/articles/nclimate1293.
- [15] Paul D Pickell and Nicholas C Coops. *Development of historical forest attribute layers using Landsat time series and kNN imputation for the western Canadian boreal forest*. Tech. rep. University of British Columbia, Dec. 2016, pp. 1–27.
- [16] R Core Team. R: A Language and Environment for Statistical Computing. R Foundation for Statistical Computing. Vienna, Austria, 2023. URL: https://www.R-project.org/.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>7</sup>https://doi.org/10.1139/X08-001

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>8</sup>https://doi.org/10.2307/3237266

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>9</sup>https://doi.org/10.1038/nclimate1293

[17] Robert M Scheller et al. "Design, development, and application of LANDIS-II, a spatial landscape simulation model with flexible temporal and spatial resolution". In: *Ecological Modelling* 201 (2007), pp. 409–419. ISSN: 03043800. DOI: 10.1016/j.ecolmodel.2006.10.009<sup>10</sup>.

- [18] Robert M. Scheller and James B. Domingo. LANDIS-II Model v6.0 Conceptual Description. Apr. 20, 2012.
- [19] Robert M. Scheller and James B. Domingo. LANDIS-II Model v6.0 User Guide. July 19, 2011.
- [20] Robert M. Scheller and Brian R. Miranda. LANDIS-II Biomass Succession v3.2 Extension User Guide. 2015.
- [21] Robert M. Scheller and Brian R. Miranda. LANDIS-II Biomass Succession v3.2 Extension User Guide. 2015.
- [22] Robert M. Scheller and David J. Mladenoff. "A forest growth and biomass module for a landscape simulation model, LANDIS: design, validation, and application". In: *Ecological Modelling* 180.1 (Dec. 2004), pp. 211–229. DOI: 10.1016/j.ecolmodel.2004.01.022<sup>11</sup>. URL: https://linkinghub.elsevier.com/retrieve/pii/S0304380004003837.
- [23] Brian R. Sturtevant et al. LANDIS-II Dynamic Fire System Extension v3.0 User Guide. 2018.
- [24] Hadley Wickham. "testthat: Get Started with Testing". In: *The R Journal* 3.1 (2011), p. 5. DOI: 10.32614/RJ-2011-002<sup>12</sup>. URL: https://journal.r-project.org/archive/2011/RJ-2011-002/index.html.
- [25] Mark D. Wilkinson et al. "The FAIR Guiding Principles for scientific data management and stewardship". In: *Scientific Data* 3.1 (Dec. 2016), p. 160018. ISSN: 2052-4463. DOI: 10.1038/sdata.2016.18<sup>13</sup>. URL: http://www.nature.com/articles/sdata201618.
- [26] Jian Yang et al. "An innovative computer design for modeling forest landscape change in very large spatial extents with fine resolutions". In: *Ecological Modelling* 222.15 (Aug. 10, 2011), pp. 2623–2630. DOI: 10. 1016/j.ecolmodel.2011.04.032<sup>14</sup>. URL: https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0304380011002651.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>10</sup>https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ecolmodel.2006.10.009

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>11</sup>https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ecolmodel.2004.01.022

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>12</sup>https://doi.org/10.32614/RJ-2011-002

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>13</sup>https://doi.org/10.1038/sdata.2016.18

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>14</sup>https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ecolmodel.2011.04.032